# Tohoku Mathematical Publications 

Editors:

| Shigetoshi Bando | Ryoshi Hotta | Satoru Igari |
| :--- | :---: | ---: |
| Masanori Ishida | Junji Kato | Katsuei Kenmotsu |
| Kyûya Masuda | Yasuo Morita | Tetsuo Nakamura |
| Seiki Nishikawa | Tadao Oda | Norio Shimakura |
| Toshikazu Sunada | Hitoshi TaKagi | Izumi Takagi |
| Toyofumi Takahashi | Takashi Yoshino |  |

with the cooperation of the
Mathematical Institute, Tohoku University

Number 2

# Certain algebraic surfaces of general type with irregularity one and their canonical mappings 

by<br>Tomokuni TAKAHASHI

January 1996
© Tohoku University
Sendai 980-77, Japan

# Certain algebraic surfaces of general type with irregularity one and their canonical mappings 

A thesis presented by

Tomokuni TAKAHASHI
to

The Mathematical Institute<br>for the degree of<br>Doctor of Science

Tohoku University
Sendai, Japan

December 1995


#### Abstract

In this paper, we show the existence of certain algebraic surfaces of general type with irregularity one, and investigate the canonical mapping of these surfaces. Such a surface has a pencil of non-hyperelliptic curves of genus 3 over an elliptic curve, and is obtained as the minimal resolution of an irreducible relative quartic hypersurface, with at most rational double points as singularities, of the projective plane bundle over an elliptic curve. We use some results on locally free sheaves over elliptic curves by Atiyah and Oda to prove the existence.


## Contents

1 Introduction ..... 1
2 Notation ..... 4
3 Preliminaries ..... 4
4 Existence and birationality ..... 8
4.1 The case where $E$ is a direct sum of three invertible sheaves ..... 9
4.1.1 Existences ..... 10
4.1.2 The canonical mappings ..... 14
4.2 $E$ is the direct sum of an invertible sheaf and an indecomposable locally free sheaf of rank 2 ..... 25
4.2.1 Existence in the case where $e$ is even ..... 26
4.2.2 Existence in the case where $e$ is odd ..... 31
4.2.3 The canonical mapping ..... 37
4.3 $E$ is indecomposable ..... 46
4.3.1 The proof when $\operatorname{deg} E \neq 1,2$ is not divisible by 3 ..... 47
4.3.2 The proof when $\operatorname{deg} E \neq 3$ is divisible by 3 ..... 48
4.3.3 The proof when $\operatorname{deg} E=3$ holds ..... 48
4.3.4 The proof when $\operatorname{deg} E=2$ holds ..... 51
4.3.5 The canonical mapping ..... 55

## 1 Introduction

Let $S$ be a minimal nonsingular complete algebraic surface defined over the complex number field $\mathbf{C} . S$ is called a canonical surface if the rational mapping $\Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}$ defined by the complete linear system $\left|K_{S}\right|$ of a canonical divisor $K_{S}$ of $S$ is birational.

In this paper, we show the existence of certain algebraic surfaces of general type with irregularity one, and investigate the canonical mapping of these surfaces. In particular, we check for all values of $p_{g}(S) \geq 2$ the existence of minimal algebraic surfaces of general type satisfying $K_{S}^{2}=3 p_{g}(S)$ and $q(S)=1$, including the cases $p_{g}(S) \leq 3$. Note that the case $p_{g}(S)=1$ was already studied by Catanese and Ciliberto [6].

In general the following inequality holds for the self-intersection number $K_{S}^{2}$ of $K_{S}$ and the geometric genus $p_{g}(S)$ of $S$ (cf. [5, Théorème 5.5], [10, Lemma 1.1]):
(I) (Castelnuovo-Horikawa's inequality) If $S$ is a canonical surface, then

$$
K_{S}^{2} \geq 3 p_{g}(S)-7
$$

(II) Castelnuovo classified canonical surfaces which satisfy the equality $K_{S}^{2}=$ $3 p_{g}(S)-7$ above. The irregularity of such a surface $S$ satisfies $q(S)=0$. With a
few exceptions such an $S$ is the minimal resolution of an irreducible relative quartic hypersurface of a $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle over $\mathbf{P}^{1}$ which has at most rational double points as singularities.

In general, the invariants $K_{S}^{2}, p_{g}(S), q(S)$ of an irreducible nonsingular relative quartic hypersurface in a $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle over a nonsingular curve $C$ of genus $b$ satisfy

$$
K_{S}^{2}=3 p_{g}(S)+7(b-1), \quad q(S)=b
$$

We may ask whether a canonical surface $S$ satisfying these equalities is obtained as the minimal resolution of an irreducible relative quartic hypersurface, with at most rational double points, of a $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle over a nonsingular curve $C$ of genus $b$. Konno [13, Lemma 3.1, Theorem 3.2] proved that it is the case if $b=1$. Namely, if $S$ is a canonical surface satisfying $K_{S}^{2}=3 p_{g}(S)$ and $q(S)=1$, then $S$ is the minimal resolution of a relative quartic hypersurface in a $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle over an elliptic curve.

More precisely, $S$ has a pencil $f: S \rightarrow C=\operatorname{Alb}(S)$ whose general fiber is a nonhyperelliptic curve of genus 3 . Hence, the direct image $f_{*} \omega_{S / C}$ of the relative dualizing sheaf $\omega_{S / C}:=\omega_{S} \otimes f^{*} \omega_{C}^{-1}$ is a locally free sheaf of rank 3 over $C$. If we let $\pi: W:=$ $\mathbf{P}\left(f_{*} \omega_{S / C}\right) \rightarrow C$ to be the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle associated to $f_{*} \omega_{S / C}, T \in \operatorname{Pic}(W)$ a tautological divisor with $\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \cong f_{*} \omega_{S / C}$, and $D \in \operatorname{Pic}(C)$ a divisor with $\mathcal{O}_{C}(D) \cong \operatorname{det} f_{*} \omega_{S / C}$, then there exists an irreducible member $S^{\prime} \in\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ which has at most rational double points as singularities, and $S$ is the minimal resolution of $S^{\prime}$ (cf. [13]).

Not all the irreducible relative quartic hypersurfaces in the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundles over elliptic curves which have at most rational double points as singularities are canonical. For example, since $0<K_{S}^{2}=3 p_{g}(S)$ holds, we have the possibilities $p_{g}(S)=1,2,3$. Obviously, $S$ is not canonical in these cases.

In this paper, we study whether a complete linear system of $\mathcal{O}_{W}(4 T) \otimes \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}$ has members which are irreducible and have at most rational double points as singularities for every locally free sheaf $E$ of rank three over an elliptic curve $C$, the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle $\pi: W:=\mathbf{P}(E) \rightarrow C$ associated to $E$ and the tautological divisor $T$ with $\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \cong E$. In particular, we check for all values of $p_{g}(S) \geq 2$ the existence of minimal algebraic surfaces of general type satisfying $K_{S}^{2}=3 p_{g}(S)$ and $q(S)=1$. (Note that the case $p_{g}(S)=1$ was already studied by Catanese and Ciliberto [6].) We then investigate their canonical mappings including the cases $p_{g}(S) \leq 3$. To study the canonical mapping of $S$, we have to study the rational mapping $\Phi_{|T|}$ of the ambient space $W$ since the canonical sheaf $\omega_{S}$ is isomorphic to the pull back of $\mathcal{O}_{W}(T)$ to $S$ by the adjunction formula.

We obtain the following results on the existence of minimal algebraic surfaces with $K_{S}^{2}=3 p_{g}(S)$ and $q(S)=1$, using the results about vector bundles over elliptic curves by Atiyah [4] and Oda [17].
(1) The case where $f_{*} \omega_{S / C}$ is isomorphic to the direct sum of three invertible sheaves over $C(\S 4.1): p_{g}(S) \geq 3$ is necessary, and conversely, for every integer $N \geq 3$, there
exist minimal algebraic surfaces of general type with $p_{g}(S)=N, K_{S}^{2}=3 p_{g}(S)$ and $q(S)=1$. (See Theorem 4.1).
(2) The case where $f_{*} \omega_{S / C}$ is isomorphic to the direct sum of an invertible sheaf and an indecomposable locally free sheaf of rank 2 over $C(\S 4.2): p_{g}(S) \geq 2$ is necessary, and conversely, for every integer $N \geq 2$, there exist minimal algebraic surfaces of general type with $p_{g}(S)=N, K_{S}^{2}=3 p_{g}(S)$ and $q(S)=1$. (See Theorem 4.10 and Theorem 4.11).
(3) The case where $f_{*} \omega_{S / C}$ is indecomposable (§4.3): $p_{g}(S) \geq 2$ is necessary, and conversely, for every integer $N \geq 2$, there exist minimal algebraic surfaces of general type with $p_{g}(S)=N, K_{S}^{2}=3 p_{g}(S)$ and $q(S)=1$. (See Theorem 4.23).

As for the canonical mappings of the above surfaces, we obtain the following results:
(1) In the case where $f_{*} \omega_{S / C}$ is the direct sum of three invertible sheaves, if $p_{g}(S) \geq 6$ holds, then the canonical mapping is always birational onto its image with the exception of only one case $f_{*} \omega_{S / C} \cong L_{0}^{\oplus 3}$ where $L_{0}$ is an invertible sheaf of degree 2 over $C$.
If $p_{g}(S)=5$ and if $f_{*} \omega_{S / C}$ is not a special locally free sheaf, then the canonical mapping is birational onto its image, too.

If $p_{g}(S)=5$ and $f_{*} \omega_{S / C}$ is a special locally free sheaf, or if $p_{g}(S)=4$, then the canonical mapping is birational onto its image in most cases. Although there possibly exists a surface whose canonical mapping is not birational onto its image, we have not obtained any example of such surfaces.
In all the above cases in (1) we obtain some examples of canonical surfaces whose canonical mappings are not holomorphic, and their canonical images are nonnormal.
When $p_{g}(S)=3$, the canonical mapping is a generically finite mapping onto the projective plane whose degree varies according to the isomorphism class of $f_{*} \omega_{S / C}$. In most cases, the degree of the canonical mappings are 6,8 or 9 . When the degree of the canonical mapping is 9 , then it is holomorphic.
(2) In the case where $f_{*} \omega_{S / C}$ is the direct sum of an invertible sheaf and an indecomposable locally free sheaf of rank 2 , if $p_{g}(S) \geq 5$ holds, then the canonical mapping is always birational onto its image.

If $p_{g}(S)=4$, then the canonical mapping is birational onto its image in most cases. Although there possibly exists a surface whose canonical mapping is not birational onto its image, we have not obtained any example of such surfaces.

In all the above cases in (2) we obtain some examples of canonical surfaces whose canonical mappings are not holomorphic, and their canonical images are nonnormal.

If $p_{g}(S)=3$, the canonical mapping is a generically finite mapping onto the projective plane whose degree varies according to the isomorphism class of $f_{*} \omega_{S / C}$. In most cases, the degree of the canonical mapping is 4,8 or 9 . When the degree of the canonical mapping is 9 , then it is holomorphic.

If $p_{g}(S)=2$, the canonical system is a linear pencil and the genus of a general member of this pencil is 7 .
(3) In the case where $f_{*} \omega_{S / C}$ is indecomposable, if $p_{g}(S) \geq 5$ holds, then the canonical mapping is always holomorphic and birational onto its image.

If $p_{g}(S)=4$, then the canonical mapping is birational onto its image in almost cases. Although there possibly exists a surface whose canonical mapping is not birational onto its image, we have not obtained any example of such surfaces

If $p_{g}(S)=3$, the canonical mapping is a generically finite mapping of degree 8 onto the projective plane in almost cases, but is not holomorphic.

If $p_{g}(S)=2$, the canonical system is a linear pencil and the genus of a general member of this pencil is 7 .

The case where the canonical mapping is birational but not holomorphic does not appear in the cases treated by Ashikaga [2] and Konno [14].

It is not so easy to study the canonical mapping of a surface $S$ when the rational mapping $\Phi_{|T|}$ of the ambient space is not birational onto its image. Thus Propositions $4.8,4.9,4.16,4.20,4.22$ and Corollary 4.37 require long proofs.

Acknowledgement The author would like to thank Professor Tadao Oda for constant encouragement and advice. Thanks are also due to Professors Tadashi Ashikaga and Kazuhiro Konno who suggested the problem to the author and provided valuable information over the years.

## 2 Notation

Let $S$ be a nonsingular complete algebraic surface over the complex number field.
$\omega_{S}$ : the canonical bundle of $S$.
$K_{S}$ : the canonical divisor of $S$.
$p_{g}(S):=\operatorname{dim}_{\mathbf{C}} H^{0}\left(S, \omega_{S}\right)=\operatorname{dim}_{\mathbf{C}} H^{2}\left(S, \mathcal{O}_{S}\right)$ : the geometric genus of $S$.
$q(S):=\operatorname{dim}_{\mathbf{C}} H^{1}\left(S, \mathcal{O}_{S}\right)$ : the irregularity of $S$.
$\chi(S):=1-q(S)+p_{g}(S):$ the arithmetic genus of $S$.

For $D \in \operatorname{Div}(S), \Phi_{|D|}: S \cdots \rightarrow \mathbf{P}\left(H^{0}\left(S, \mathcal{O}_{S}(D)\right)\right)$ denotes the rational mapping determined by a complete linear system $|D|$.

## 3 Preliminaries

Let us mention some results which we need later.
Theorem 3.1 (cf. Konno [13, Corollary 6.4]) If $S$ is a canonical surface with $q(S)=1$ and $K_{S}^{2} \leq(10 / 3) \chi\left(\mathcal{O}_{S}\right)$, then a general fiber of the Albanese mapping $f: S \rightarrow C:=$ $\operatorname{Alb}(S)$ is a nonsingular curve of genus 3 .

Theorem 3.2 (cf. Konno [13, Lemma 3.1, and Theorem 3.2]) Let $f: S \rightarrow C$ be a surjective morphism from a nonsingular surface $S$ to a nonsingular curve $C$ of genus $b$ such that a general fiber is a non-hyperelliptic curve of genus 3 . Assume further that $f$ is relatively minimal. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
K_{S}^{2} \geq 3 \chi(S)+10(b-1) \tag{*}
\end{equation*}
$$

Furthermore, let $\pi: W:=\mathbf{P}\left(f_{*} \omega_{S / C}\right) \rightarrow C$ be the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle over $C$ defined by the locally free sheaf $f_{*} \omega_{S / C}$ of rank $3, T$ a tautological divisor such that $\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \cong f_{*} \omega_{S / C}$, and $\psi: S \cdots \rightarrow W$ the rational mapping over $C$ induced by the natural sheaf homomorphism $f^{*} f_{*} \omega_{S / C} \rightarrow \omega_{S / C}$. If the equality holds in $(*)$, then $\psi$ is a morphism and the image $S^{\prime}=\psi(S)$ of $\psi$ has only rational double points as singularities. If we regard $S^{\prime}$ as a divisor on $W$, then

$$
\mathcal{O}_{W}\left(S^{\prime}\right) \cong \mathcal{O}_{W}(4 T) \otimes \pi^{*} \operatorname{det}\left(f_{*} \omega_{S / C}\right)^{\vee}
$$

holds, where $\left(f_{*} \omega_{S / C}\right)^{\vee}$ is the $\mathcal{O}_{C}$-module dual to $f_{*} \omega_{S / C}$.
Remark The inequality stated in the first half of Theorem 3.2 was proved by Horikawa [11], [12, Proposition 2.1] and Reid [18] in a different way. Konno [14, Theorem 2.1] himself also gave another proof.

Proposition 3.3 Let $C$ be a nonsingular curve of genus $b$, and $E$ a locally free sheaf of rank 3 over $C$. Let $\pi: W:=\mathbf{P}(E) \rightarrow C$ be the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle over $C$ associated to $E$, $T$ a tautological divisor with $\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \cong E$, and $D \in \operatorname{Div}(C)$ a divisor on $C$ such that $\mathcal{O}_{C}(D) \cong \operatorname{det} E$. If the complete linear system $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ has an irreducible member $S^{\prime}$ with at most rational double points as singularities, then the following equalities hold for a minimal resolution $S$ of $S^{\prime}$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
K_{S}^{2} & =3 \operatorname{deg} E+16(b-1) \\
p_{g}(S) & =\operatorname{deg} E+3(b-1)+\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(C, E^{\vee}\right) \\
q(S) & =b+\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(C, E^{\vee}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Furthermore, if we let $\nu: S \rightarrow S^{\prime}$ to be the minimal resolution, and if we denote $f:=$ $\pi \circ \nu: S \rightarrow C$, then we have $f_{*} \omega_{S / C} \cong E$.

Proof We have $\omega_{S^{\prime}}^{2}=\omega_{S}^{2}, p_{g}\left(S^{\prime}\right)=p_{g}(S)$ and $q\left(S^{\prime}\right)=q(S)$ by the hypothesis that $S^{\prime}$ has only rational double points as singularities. From the Euler exact sequence

$$
0 \rightarrow \Omega_{W / C}^{1} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{W}(-T) \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{W}} \pi^{*} E \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{W} \rightarrow 0
$$

for instance, we have $\omega_{W / C} \cong \mathcal{O}_{W}(-3 T) \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{W}} \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E$, hence $\omega_{W} \cong \mathcal{O}_{W}(-3 T) \otimes \pi^{*}\left(\omega_{C} \otimes\right.$ $\operatorname{det} E)$. Thus by the adjunction formula, we get $\omega_{S^{\prime}} \cong \mathcal{O}_{S^{\prime}} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{W} \mathcal{O}_{W}\left(T+\pi^{*} K_{C}\right)$. Hence using $T^{3}-(\operatorname{deg} E) T^{2} F=0$, we get

$$
\omega_{S^{\prime}}^{2}=\left(T+\pi^{*} K_{C}\right)^{2}\left(4 T-\pi^{*} D\right)=4 T^{3}-T^{2} \pi^{*} D+8 T^{2} \pi^{*} K_{C}=3 \operatorname{deg} E+16(b-1)
$$

Next consider the cohomology long exact sequence induced by the exact sequence

$$
0 \rightarrow \omega_{W} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{W}\left(T+\pi^{*} K_{C}\right) \rightarrow \omega_{S^{\prime}} \rightarrow 0
$$

Since $R^{i} \pi_{*} \omega_{W}=0$ for $i=0$, 1 , we have $H^{i}\left(W, \omega_{W}\right)=0$ for $i=0,1$ by the Leray spectral sequence. Hence we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
p_{g}\left(S^{\prime}\right) & :=\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(S^{\prime}, \omega_{S^{\prime}}\right)=\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}\left(T+\pi^{*} K_{C}\right)\right)=\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(C, E \otimes \omega_{C}\right) \\
& =\operatorname{deg} E+3(b-1)+\operatorname{dim} H^{1}\left(C, E \otimes \omega_{C}\right) \quad \text { (by the Riemann-Roch theorem) } \\
& =\operatorname{deg} E+3(b-1)+\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(C, E^{\vee}\right) \quad \text { (by the Serre duality) }
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $\operatorname{dim} H^{2}\left(W, \quad \omega_{W}\right)=\operatorname{dim} H^{1}\left(W, \quad \mathcal{O}_{W}\right)$ by the Serre duality, and since $\operatorname{dim} H^{1}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}\right)=\operatorname{dim} H^{1}\left(C, \mathcal{O}_{C}\right)=b$ by $\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W} \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}, R^{1} \pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}=0$ and the Leray spectral sequence, we have $\operatorname{dim} H^{2}\left(W, \omega_{W}\right)=b$. Therefore from $H^{2}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T+\right.$ $\left.\left.\pi^{*} K_{C}\right)\right) \cong H^{2}\left(C, E \otimes \omega_{C}\right)=0$, we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
q\left(S^{\prime}\right) & :=\operatorname{dim} H^{1}\left(S^{\prime}, \mathcal{O}_{S^{\prime}}\right)=\operatorname{dim} H^{1}\left(S^{\prime}, \omega_{S^{\prime}}\right) \quad \text { (by the Serre duality) } \\
& =\operatorname{dim} H^{2}\left(W, \omega_{W}\right)+\operatorname{dim} H^{1}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}\left(T+\pi^{*} K_{C}\right)\right)=b+\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(C, E^{\vee}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $S^{\prime}$ has at most rational double points as singularities, $\nu^{*} \omega_{S^{\prime} / C} \cong \omega_{S / C}$ and $\nu_{*} \mathcal{O}_{S} \cong$ $\mathcal{O}_{S^{\prime}}$ hold. Since $\omega_{S^{\prime}} \cong\left(\mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{W}} \pi^{*} \omega_{C}\right) \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{W}} \mathcal{O}_{S^{\prime}}$ as we saw above, we have $\omega_{S^{\prime} / C} \cong$ $\mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{W}} \mathcal{O}_{S^{\prime}}$. Hence

$$
\begin{aligned}
& f_{*} \omega_{S / C} \cong \pi_{*} \nu_{*} \omega_{S / C} \cong \pi_{*} \nu_{*} \nu^{*} \omega_{S^{\prime} / C} \\
& \quad \cong \pi_{*}\left(\omega_{S^{\prime} / C} \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{S^{\prime}}} \nu_{*} \mathcal{O}_{S}\right) \cong \pi_{*} \omega_{S^{\prime} / C} \cong \pi_{*}\left(\mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{W}} \mathcal{O}_{S^{\prime}}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

As the long exact sequence associated to the short exact sequence $0 \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{W}(-3 T) \otimes \mathcal{O}_{W}$ $\pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{W}} \mathcal{O}_{S^{\prime}} \rightarrow 0$, we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 \rightarrow & \pi_{*}\left(\mathcal{O}_{W}(-3 T) \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{W}} \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E\right) \rightarrow \pi_{*} \mathcal{O}(T) \\
& \rightarrow \pi_{*}\left(\mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{W}} \mathcal{O}_{S^{\prime}}\right) \rightarrow R^{1} \pi_{*}\left(\mathcal{O}_{W}(-3 T) \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{W}} \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $R^{j} \pi_{*}\left(\mathcal{O}_{W}(-3 T) \otimes \mathcal{O}_{W} \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E\right) \cong\left(R^{j} \pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}(-3 T)\right) \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{C}} \operatorname{det} E=0$ for $j=0,1$, we obtain

$$
E=\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \cong \pi_{*}\left(\mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{W}} \mathcal{O}_{S^{\prime}}\right)
$$

q.e.d.

Remark By the last assertion of Proposition 3.3, we see that two different $\mathbf{P}^{2}$ bundles do not contain the same surface.

Theorem 3.4 (cf. Atiyah [4, Theorem 5, Theorem 7 and Corollary, Theorem 9], Oda [17, Theorem 1.2]) Let $C$ be an elliptic curve and $\mathcal{E}_{C}(r, d)(r, d \in \mathbf{Z})$ the set of isomorphism classes of indecomposable locally free sheaves of rank $r$ and degree $d$ over $C$.
(1) If $(r, d)=1$, and if we fix any isogeny $\varphi: \tilde{C} \rightarrow C$ of degree $r$, we have a bijective mapping

$$
\left\{L_{0} \in \operatorname{Pic}(\tilde{C}) \mid \operatorname{deg} L_{0}=d\right\} \ni L_{0} \mapsto \varphi_{*} L_{0} \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(r, d)
$$

If we denote $G=\operatorname{ker} \varphi$, then we get

$$
\varphi^{*} \varphi_{*} L_{0} \cong \bigoplus_{\sigma \in G} T_{\sigma}^{*} L_{0}
$$

where $T_{\sigma}: \tilde{C} \rightarrow \tilde{C}$ is the translation by $\sigma \in G$ on $\tilde{C}$.
(2) For any $r \in \mathbf{N}$, there exists a unique $F_{r} \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(r, 0)$ such that $H^{0}\left(C, F_{r}\right) \neq$ 0. $F_{r}$ is a successive extension of $\mathcal{O}_{C}$, and $F_{r} \cong S^{r-1}\left(F_{2}\right)$ holds. Furthermore, $\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(C, F_{r}\right)=\operatorname{dim} H^{1}\left(C, F_{r}\right)=1$. For $m \in \mathbf{Z}$

$$
\left\{L_{0} \in \operatorname{Pic}(C) \mid \operatorname{deg} L_{0}=m\right\} \ni L_{0} \mapsto F_{r} \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{C}} L_{0} \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(r, r m)
$$

is a bijective mapping.
Remark Although not necessary in this paper, we have the following in general: If $(r, d)=h$, then $\mathcal{E}_{C}(r / h, d / h) \ni F^{\prime} \mapsto F^{\prime} \otimes F_{h} \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(r, d)$ is a bijective mapping.

We use the following lemma in $\S 4.2$ and $\S 4.3$ :
Lemma 3.5 Let $C$ be an elliptic curve, $\mu: Y=\mathbf{P}\left(F_{2}\right) \rightarrow C$ a ruled surface associated to $F_{2}$, and $C^{\prime} \subset Y$ the unique section of $\mu$ with $\mu_{*} \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C^{\prime}\right) \cong F_{2}$. For any point $p \in C$ and for any positive integer $i$, we have

$$
\operatorname{Bs}\left|i C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{p}\right|=\left\{y_{0}\right\}
$$

where $\Gamma_{p}:=\mu^{-1}(p)$ and $y_{0}:=C^{\prime} \cap \Gamma_{p}$. Furthermore, general members of $\left|i C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{p}\right|$ are nonsingular at $y_{0}$, and all the members which are nonsingular at $y_{0}$ have the same tangent at $y_{0}$. If $i$ and $j$ are positive integers with $i \neq j$, then a nonsingular member of $\left|i C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{p}\right|$ and a nonsingular member of $\left|j C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{p}\right|$ have different tangents at $y_{0}$.

Proof Since $i C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{p} \in\left|i C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{p}\right|$, the base point of $\left|i C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{p}\right|$ exists only on $C^{\prime} \cup \Gamma_{p}$. Since

$$
H^{1}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(i C^{\prime}\right)\right) \cong H^{1}\left(C, S^{i} F_{2}\right) \cong H^{1}\left(C, F_{i+1}\right) \cong \mathbf{C}
$$

and

$$
H^{1}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(i C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{p}\right)\right) \cong H^{1}\left(C, F_{i+1} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}(p)\right)=0
$$

the image of the restriction mapping

$$
H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(i C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{p}\right)\right) \rightarrow H^{0}\left(\Gamma_{p}, \mathcal{O}_{\Gamma_{p}}\left(i C^{\prime}\right)\right)
$$

is $i$-dimensional. Since $H^{0}\left(\Gamma_{p}, \mathcal{O}_{\Gamma_{p}}\left(i C^{\prime}\right)\right)\left(\cong H^{0}\left(\mathbf{P}^{1}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{1}}(i)\right)\right)$ is $(i+1)$-dimensional, there exsits at most one base point on $\Gamma_{p}$. On the other hand, since

$$
\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(i C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{p}\right)\right)=i+1 \neq i=\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left((i-1) C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{p}\right)\right)
$$

$C^{\prime}$ is not a fixed component of $\left|i C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{p}\right|$. Furthermore, since $\left(i C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{p}\right) C^{\prime}=1$ and $N_{C^{\prime} / Y} \cong \mathcal{O}_{C^{\prime}}$, only $y_{0}=C^{\prime} \cap \Gamma_{p}$ is the base point of $\left|i C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{p}\right|$ lying on $C^{\prime}$. Hence, we obtain Bs $\left|i C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{p}\right|=\left\{y_{0}\right\}$.

If all the members of $\left|i C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{p}\right|$ are singular at $y_{0}$, the intersection multiplicity of a member of $\left|i C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{p}\right|$ and $C^{\prime}$ at $y_{0}$ is at least two. This contradicts $\left(i C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{p}\right) C^{\prime}=1$, and hence, general members of $\left|i C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{p}\right|$ are nonsingular at $y_{0}$.

Let $M \in\left|i C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{p}\right|$ be a nonsingular member. If we consider the cohomology long exact sequence induced from the exact sequence of sheaves

$$
0 \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{Y} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{Y}(M) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{M}(M) \rightarrow 0
$$

we obtain

$$
\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(M, \mathcal{O}_{M}(M)\right)=i+1
$$

and

$$
\operatorname{dim} \operatorname{Im}\left\{H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}(M)\right) \rightarrow H^{0}\left(M, \mathcal{O}_{M}(M)\right)\right\}=i
$$

If we regard $y_{0}$ as a point on $M$, then $y_{0}$ can be written as $\left.C^{\prime}\right|_{M}$. Since $\omega_{M} \cong \omega_{Y} \otimes$ $\mathcal{O}_{Y}(M) \otimes \mathcal{O}_{M} \cong \mathcal{O}_{M}\left((i-2) C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{p}\right)$ by the adjunction formula, we have

$$
\mathcal{O}_{M}(M) \cong \omega_{M} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{M}\left(2 y_{0}\right)
$$

The subsystem of the complete linear system of $\left.M\right|_{M}$ corresponding to the image of the restriction mapping $H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}(M)\right) \rightarrow H^{0}\left(M, \mathcal{O}_{M}(M)\right)$ may be regarded as the complete linear system of $\left.M\right|_{M}-y_{0}$, and its dimension is $i-1$ by what we mentioned above. On the other hand, since

$$
\operatorname{deg} \omega_{M}=\left(i C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{p}\right)\left((i-2) C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{p}\right)=2 i-2
$$

the genus $g(M)$ of $M$ is equal to $i$. Since $\left.M\right|_{M}-2 y_{0} \sim K_{M}$, the complete linear system of $\left.M\right|_{M}-2 y_{0}$ is also ( $i-1$ )-dimensional. Hence, $y_{0}$ is the base point of the complete linear system of $\left.M\right|_{M}-y_{0}$, and the intersection multiplicity of any nonsingular member $M^{\prime} \in\left|i C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{p}\right|$ with $M$ at $y_{0}$ is at least two, i.e., $M$ and $M^{\prime}$ have the same tangent.

The last assertion can be proved in the same way as above.
q.e.d.

## 4 Existence and birationality

By Theorem 3.1 and Theorem 3.2, to classify canonical surfaces with $K_{S}^{2}=3 p_{g}(S)$, and $q(S)=1$, we need to have a necessary and sufficient condition for the complete linear system $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ on the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle $W=\mathbf{P}(E)$ associated to a locally free sheaf $E$ of rank 3 over an elliptic curve $C$ to have irreducible members with at most rational double points as singularities, where $T$ is a tautological divisor on $W$ such that $\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \cong E$, and $D \in \operatorname{Div}(C)$ is a divisor such that $\mathcal{O}_{C}(D) \cong \operatorname{det} E$. We should then choose those members whose nonsingular models have the canonical mappings which are birational onto their images. Locally free sheaves of rank 3 over an elliptic curve $C$ is expressed uniquely up to order as direct sums of indecomposable locally free sheaves (cf. [4]), hence we should consider the following five cases:
(1) $E$ is a direct sum of three invertible sheaves.
(2) $E$ is a direct sum of an invertible sheaf and an indecomposable locally free sheaf of rank 2 .
(i) The degree of the indecomposable locally free sheaf of rank 2 is odd.
(ii) The degree of the indecomposable locally free sheaf of rank 2 is even.
(3) $E$ is indecomposable.
(i) $\operatorname{deg} E$ is not divisible by 3 .
(ii) $\operatorname{deg} E$ is divisible by 3 .

We consider each of these cases.
Definition Let $\pi: W \rightarrow C$ be the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle over the elliptic curve $C$ associated to a locally free sheaf $E$ of rank $3, T$ the tautological divisor with $\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \cong E$, and $D \in \operatorname{Div}(C)$ a divisor with $\mathcal{O}_{C}(D) \cong \operatorname{det} E$. We say that $E$ satisfies the condition (A) if the complete linear system $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ has a member $S^{\prime}$ satisfying the following conditions:
(i) $S^{\prime}$ is irreducible and has at most rational double points as singularities.
(ii) The minimal resolution $S$ of $S^{\prime}$ is of general type.
(iii) $S$ satisfies $K_{S}^{2}=3 p_{g}(S)$ and $q(S)=1$.

Remark If $H^{0}\left(C, E^{\vee}\right)=0$, then we have $K_{S}^{2} \neq 3 p_{g}(S)$ and $q(S) \neq 1$ by Proposition 3.3. Hence we only have to consider the locally free sheaves $E$ with $H^{0}\left(C, E^{\vee}\right)=0$. Furthermore, if $E$ satisfies the condition (A), then $S$ is of general type, and hence, $\chi\left(\mathcal{O}_{S}\right)=\operatorname{deg} E>0$.

On the other hand, if $f^{\prime}: S^{\prime} \rightarrow C^{\prime}$ is a surjective morphism from a nonsingular surface $S^{\prime}$ to a nonsingular curve $C^{\prime}$, then $f_{*}^{\prime} \omega_{S^{\prime} / C^{\prime}}$ is nef, hence, any quotient locally free sheaf of $f_{*}^{\prime} \omega_{S^{\prime} / C^{\prime}}$ has non-negative degree by Fujita's result [7, (1.2) Proposition]. Hence, we only have to consider nef locally free sheaves.

### 4.1 The case where $E$ is a direct sum of three invertible sheaves.

Let $L_{0}, L_{1}, L_{2}$ be invertible sheaves over an elliptic curve $C$ such that $E \cong L_{0} \oplus L_{1} \oplus L_{2}$, and denote $d_{i}:=\operatorname{deg} L_{i}(i=0,1,2)$. Furthermore, let $\pi: W \rightarrow C$ be the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle associated to $E$, and $T$ the tautological divisor with $\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \cong E$. In $\S 4.1$, we prove the existence of a surface $S$ of general type with $K_{S}^{2}=3 p_{g}(S), q(S)=1$ and $p_{g}(S)=N$ for any integer $N \geq 3$ by obtaining necessary and sufficient conditions for the complete linear system of $\mathcal{O}_{W}(4 T) \otimes \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}$ to have members with at most rational double points as singularities (Theorem 4.1). We then study the canonical mapping of the surfaces thus obtained. The results about the canonical mappings are stated in Corollaries 4.3 and 4.4, and Propositions 4.6, 4.8 and 4.9 .

### 4.1.1 Existences

We may assume $d_{0} \leq d_{1} \leq d_{2}$. We only have to consider the case $d_{0} \geq 0, d_{1} \geq 0$ and $d_{2}>0$ by the remark immedietely before $\S 4.1$. By further renumbering of $L_{0}, L_{1}, L_{2}$ if necessary, we get the following:

Theorem 4.1 Let $\pi: W=\mathbf{P}(E) \rightarrow C$ be the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle over an elliptic curve $C$ associated to $E \cong L_{0} \oplus L_{1} \oplus L_{2}$, $T$ a tautological divisor such that $\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \cong E$, and $D \in \operatorname{Div}(C)$ a divisor on $C$ with $\mathcal{O}_{C}(D) \cong \operatorname{det} E$. Denote $d_{i}:=\operatorname{deg} L_{i}(i=0,1,2)$, and suppose $0 \leq d_{0} \leq d_{1} \leq d_{2}$ and $d_{2}>0$. Then the complete linear system $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ on $W$ satisfies the condition (A) if and only if the following (1), (2) and (3) hold.
(1) One of the following (i), (ii) and (iii) holds:
(i) $d_{0}+d_{2}<3 d_{1}$,
(ii) $L_{0} \otimes L_{2} \cong L_{1}^{\otimes 3}$,
(iii) $2 d_{0}=2 d_{1}=d_{2}$ and one of $L_{1}^{\otimes 2}, L_{0} \otimes L_{1}, L_{0}^{\otimes 2}, L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}$ is isomorphic to $L_{2}$.
(2) One of the following (i), (ii) and (iii) holds:
(i) $d_{1}<2 d_{0}$,
(ii) $L_{1} \cong L_{0}^{\otimes 2}$,
(iii) $2 d_{0}=d_{1}=d_{2}$ and $L_{2} \cong L_{0}^{\otimes 2}$.
(3) If $d_{0}=d_{1}=d_{2}=1$ holds, then one of $L_{0}, L_{1}, L_{2}$ is not isomorphic to the others.

This proposition can be proved by a method analogous to Ashikaga-Konno [3, Proof of Claim III, pp.523-524], as follows:

Proof $H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \otimes \pi^{*} L_{i}^{-1}\right) \cong H^{0}\left(C, L_{0} \otimes L_{i}^{-1}\right) \oplus H^{0}\left(C, L_{1} \otimes L_{i}^{-1}\right) \oplus H^{0}\left(C, L_{2} \otimes\right.$ $L_{i}^{-1}$ ) has a component of the form $H^{0}\left(C, \mathcal{O}_{C}\right)$ for each $i=0,1,2$. Hence we can choose $X_{i} \in H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \otimes \pi^{*} L_{i}^{-1}\right)(i=0,1,2)$ which give homogenous coordinates on each fiber of $\pi$. Since

$$
H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(4 T) \otimes \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)=H^{0}\left(C, S^{4} E \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)
$$

holds, this cohomology group can be written as

$$
\bigoplus_{\substack{i, j>0 \\ i+j \leq 4}} H^{0}\left(C, L_{0}^{\otimes(3-i-j)} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes(i-1)} \otimes L_{2}^{\otimes(j-1)}\right) X_{0}^{4-i-j} X_{1}^{i} X_{2}^{j}
$$

Hence any $\Psi \in H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(4 T) \otimes \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$ can be written as

$$
\Psi=\sum_{\substack{i, j \geq 0 \\ i+j \leq 4}} \psi_{i j} X_{0}^{4-i-j} X_{1}^{i} X_{2}^{j},
$$

where $\psi_{i j} \in H^{0}\left(C, L_{0}^{\otimes(3-i-j)} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes(i-1)} \otimes L_{2}^{\otimes(j-1)}\right)$.
Suppose that (1) does not hold. When $j=0$,

$$
\operatorname{deg}\left(L_{0}^{\otimes(3-i)} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes(i-1)} \otimes L_{2}^{-1}\right)=(3-i) d_{0}+(i-1) d_{1}-d_{2} \leq-d_{0}+3 d_{1}-d_{2} \leq 0
$$

holds, hence if $d_{0}+d_{2}>3 d_{1}$, the coefficients of $X_{0}^{4}, X_{0}^{3} X_{1}, X_{0}^{2} X_{1}^{2}, X_{0} X_{1}^{3}, X_{1}^{4}$ are 0 , and hence $\Psi$ is reducible (it is divisible by $X_{2}$ ). If $d_{0}+d_{2}=3 d_{1}$, and none of $L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}, L_{0}^{\otimes 2}, L_{0} \otimes L_{1}, L_{1}^{\otimes 2}, L_{0}^{-1} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3}$ are isomorphic to $L_{2}$, then $\Psi$ is divisible by $X_{2}$ again.

Next we suppose that (2) does not hold. Then since we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \operatorname{deg}\left(L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \otimes L_{2}^{-1}\right)=3 d_{0}-d_{1}-d_{2}=\left(2 d_{0}-d_{1}\right)+\left(d_{0}-d_{2}\right) \leq 2 d_{0}-d_{1} \leq 0, \\
& \operatorname{deg}\left(L_{0}^{\otimes 2 \otimes} \otimes L_{2}^{-1}\right)=2 d_{0}-d_{2}=\left(2 d_{0}-d_{1}\right)+\left(d_{1}-d_{2}\right) \leq 2 d_{0}-d_{1} \leq 0, \\
& \operatorname{deg}\left(L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}\right)=2 d_{0}-d_{1} \leq 0,
\end{aligned}
$$

if $2 d_{0}<d_{1}$, then the coefficients of $X_{0}^{4}, X_{0}^{3} X_{1}, X_{0}^{3} X_{2}$ of $\Psi$ are 0 . Let $Z_{0} \subset W$ be the curve defined by $X_{1}=X_{2}=0$. (In the rest of the proof, $Z_{0}$ denotes this curve.) The degrees with respect to $X_{1}$ and $X_{2}$ of each term of $\Psi$ are greater than 1 on $Z_{0}$, hence the divisor on $W$ defined by $\Psi=0$ contains $Z_{0}$ as a singular curve. The case where $2 d_{0}=d_{1}$ and $L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \not \approx L_{1}$ is the same as above, if $d_{1}<d_{2}$. (If $d_{1}=d_{2}$ and $L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \cong L_{2}$ hold,
interchange $L_{1}$ and $L_{2}$ and regard this case as the case $L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \cong L_{1}$.) When $d_{1}=d_{2}$ and $L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \not \not 二 L_{i},(i=1,2)$ hold, if we assume $3 d_{0}-d_{1}-d_{2}=2 d_{0}-d_{2}$, then we have $d_{0}=d_{1}$. However, since $2 d_{0}=d_{1}=d_{2}$, we have $d_{0}=d_{1}=d_{2}$, a contradiction to the assumption. Hence $3 d_{0}-d_{1}-d_{2}<2 d_{0}-d_{2}$, and $Z_{0}$ is a singular curve in the divisor defined by $\Psi=0$ on $W$.

We suppose (3) does not hold, i.e., $d_{0}=d_{1}=d_{2}=1$ and $L_{0} \cong L_{1} \cong L_{2}$ hold. In this case, for all $i, j$ satisfying $i, j \geq 0$ and $i+j \leq 4, L_{0}^{\otimes(3-i-j)} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes(i-1)} \otimes L_{2}^{\otimes(j-1)}$ are isomorphic to one another, and of degree 1. Hence there exists a point $p \in C$ such that $\psi_{i j}=0$ holds for all $i, j$. Consequently, $F:=\pi^{-1}(p)$ is a fixed component of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$.

From now on, we assume that (1), (2) and (3) hold.
(I) Let us look at the case where $3 d_{0}>d_{1}+d_{2}$ or $L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \cong L_{1} \otimes L_{2}$.
(If, moreover, $d_{0}=d_{1}$ and $L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \cong L_{1} \otimes L_{2}$ hold, then we have $\operatorname{deg}\left(L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \otimes L_{2}^{-1}\right)=$ $\operatorname{deg}\left(L_{0}^{-1} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{2}^{-1}\right)$. In this case, if $L_{1}^{\otimes 3} \neq L_{0} \otimes L_{2}$ holds, we interchange $L_{0}$ and $L_{1}$ and regard this case as the case $L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \nsupseteq L_{1} \otimes L_{2}$. So we may assume $L_{1}^{\otimes 3} \cong L_{0} \otimes L_{2}$ holds when $d_{0}=d_{1}$ and $L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \cong L_{1} \otimes L_{2}$ hold.)

Since we have $\operatorname{deg}\left(L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \otimes L_{2}^{-1}\right) \leq \operatorname{deg}\left(L_{0}^{\otimes(3-i-j)} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes(i-1)} \otimes L_{2}^{\otimes(j-1)}\right),\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ has no base point if and only if $3 d_{0}-d_{1}-d_{2} \neq 1$. Indeed, under the assumption of (I), we have $H^{0}\left(C, L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \otimes L_{2}^{-1}\right) \neq 0, H^{0}\left(C, L_{0}^{-1} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{2}^{-1}\right) \neq 0$ and $H^{0}\left(C, L_{0}^{-1} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \otimes L_{2}^{\otimes 3}\right) \neq 0$, and hence we can choose nonzero global sections of $H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(4 T) \otimes \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$ of the form $\Psi_{0}:=\psi_{00} X_{0}^{4}, \Psi_{1}:=\psi_{40} X_{1}^{4}, \Psi_{2}:=\psi_{04} X_{2}^{4}$. If $3 d_{0}-d_{1}-d_{2} \neq 1$ holds, then we have $\operatorname{deg}\left(L_{0}^{-1} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \otimes L_{2}^{\otimes 3}\right) \geq 2$ and $L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \otimes$ $L_{2}^{-1}, L_{0}^{-1} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{2}^{-1}$ either have degrees greater than 1 or are isomorphic to $\mathcal{O}_{C}$. Hence $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ has no base point. If $3 d_{0}-d_{1}-d_{2}=1$ holds, there exists a unique point $p_{0} \in C$ such that $\psi_{00}\left(p_{0}\right)=0$ holds for any $\psi_{00} \in H^{0}\left(C, L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \otimes L_{2}^{-1}\right)$. If we denote $F_{0}:=\pi^{-1}\left(p_{0}\right)$, then $q_{0}:=F_{0} \cap Z_{0}$ is an isolated fixed point of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$. (In the rest of the proof, $p_{0}$ and $q_{0}$ denote these points.)

Hence if $3 d_{0}-d_{1}-d_{2} \neq 1$ holds, the general member of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ is irreducible and nonsingular by Bertini's theorem.

We claim that even if $3 d_{0}-d_{1}-d_{2}=1$ holds, the general member of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ is also irreducible and nonsingular. Indeed if $-d_{0}+3 d_{1}-d_{2} \geq 2$ and $-d_{0}-d_{1}+3 d_{2} \geq 2$ hold, there exist no base point except $q_{0}$. If we let $t$ to be a local coordinate around $p_{0}$ on $C$, and if we denote $x_{i}:=X_{i} / X_{0}(i=1,2)$, then $\left(t, x_{1}, x_{2}\right)$ is a local coordinate around $q_{0}$ on $W$. General $\Psi \in H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(4 T) \otimes \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$ can be written as

$$
\Psi=t+\psi_{10} x_{1}+\psi_{01} x_{2}+\cdots
$$

around $q_{0}$, so the divisor $(\Psi)$ on $W$ is nonsingular at $q_{0}$. If $-d_{0}+3 d_{1}-d_{2}=1$ and $-d_{0}-d_{1}+3 d_{2} \geq 2$ hold, there exists a unique point $p_{1} \in C$ with $\psi_{40}\left(p_{1}\right)=0$ for all $\psi_{40} \in H^{0}\left(C, L_{0}^{-1} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{2}^{-1}\right)$. If we assume $L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \otimes L_{2}^{-1} \neq L_{0}^{-1} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{2}^{-1}$, then $p_{0} \neq p_{1}$ holds. In this case, if we let $Z_{1}$ to be the curve defined by $X_{0}=X_{1}=0$ on $W$, and if we denote $F_{1}:=\pi^{-1}\left(q_{1}\right)$ and $q_{1}:=Z_{1} \cap F_{1}$, then we have $q_{0} \neq q_{1}$ and $\operatorname{Bs}\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|=$
$\left\{q_{0}, q_{1}\right\}$. We can show that the general member of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ is nonsingular at $q_{0}$ and $q_{1}$ in the same way as above. (In the rest of the proof, $p_{1}, q_{1}, F_{1}, Z_{1}$ denote the above points and curves.) If we assume $L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \otimes L_{2}^{-1} \cong L_{0}^{-1} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{2}^{-1}$ and $L_{0} \not \neq L_{1}$, then although $p_{0}$ and $p_{1}$ coincide, $q_{0}$ and $q_{1}$ are two distnct points contained in the same fiber of $\pi$, and we have $\operatorname{Bs}\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|=\left\{q_{0}, q_{1}\right\}$ again. We can show that a general member of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ is nonsingular at $q_{0}$ and $q_{1}$ in the same way as above. If we assume $L_{0} \cong L_{1}$, then $p_{0}=p_{1}$ holds. In this case, if we let $Z^{\prime}$ to be the intersection of $F_{0}=\pi^{-1}\left(p_{0}\right)$ and the relative hyperplane defined by the equation $X_{2}=0$, then $\operatorname{Bs}\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|=Z^{\prime}$ holds. In this case, we have $H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \otimes \pi^{*} L_{0}^{-1}\right) \cong H^{0}\left(C, \mathcal{O}_{C}\right) \oplus H^{0}\left(C, \mathcal{O}_{C}\right) \oplus$ $H^{0}\left(C, L_{2} \otimes L_{0}^{-1}\right)$. Let $X_{0} \in H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \otimes \pi^{*} L_{0}^{-1}\right)$ be the element of the subspace corresponding to the first $H^{0}\left(C, \mathcal{O}_{C}\right)$, and $X_{1} \in H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \otimes \pi^{*} L_{0}^{-1}\right)$ the element of the subspace corresponding to the second $H^{0}\left(C, \mathcal{O}_{C}\right)$. Any element of the subspace of $H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \otimes \pi^{*} L_{0}^{-1}\right)$ corresponding to $H^{0}\left(C, \mathcal{O}_{C}\right) \oplus H^{0}\left(C, \mathcal{O}_{C}\right)$ can be written as $a X_{0}+b X_{1}$ for some $a, b \in \mathbf{C}$, and the divisor $\left(a X_{0}+b X_{1}\right)$ of $W$ is clearly irreducible. Hence if we denote $X_{0}^{\prime}:=a X_{0}+b X_{1}$, then $X_{0}^{\prime}, X_{1}$ and $X_{2}$ give homogeneous coordinates of all the fibers of $\pi$. There exist constants $a$ and $b$ in $\mathbf{C}$ with $q^{\prime}=Z^{\prime} \cap\left(X_{0}^{\prime}\right)$ for any point $q^{\prime} \in Z^{\prime}$. For this $X_{0}^{\prime}$, if we denote $x_{0}^{\prime}:=X_{0}^{\prime} / X_{1}$ and $x_{2}:=X_{2} / X_{1}$, and if we let $t$ to be a local coordinate around $p_{0}=p_{1}$, then $\left(t, x_{0}^{\prime}, x_{2}\right)$ gives a local coordinate around $q^{\prime}$ on $W$. A general $\Psi \in H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(4 T) \otimes \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$ can be written as

$$
\Psi=t+\psi_{31} x_{2}+\cdots
$$

locally, hence the divisor $(\Psi)$ is nonsingular at $q^{\prime}$. Thus, a general member of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ is nonsingular at $Z^{\prime}$. Next we assume $-d_{0}+3 d_{1}-d_{2}=-d_{0}-d_{1}+3 d_{2}=1$, i.e., $d_{0}=d_{1}=d_{2}=1$. Suppose further that $L_{0} \cong L_{1}$. In this case, we have $L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \otimes L_{2}^{-1} \cong$ $L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \otimes L_{2}^{-1} \cong L_{0} \otimes L_{1} \otimes L_{2}^{-1} \cong L_{1}^{\otimes 2} \otimes L_{2}^{-1} \cong L_{0}^{-1} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{2}^{-1}$, so there exists a point $p \in C$ such that the coefficients $\psi_{00}, \psi_{10}, \psi_{20}, \psi_{30}, \psi_{40}$ of $X_{0}^{4}, X_{0}^{3} X_{1}, X_{0}^{2} X_{1}^{2}, X_{0} X_{1}^{3}, X_{1}^{4}$ vanish on $F:=\pi^{-1}(p)$. Hence if we let $Z^{\prime}$ to be the curve which is the intersection of $F$ and the relative hyperplane defined by the equation $X_{2}=0$, then $Z^{\prime}$ is contained in $\operatorname{Bs}\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$. Therefore we have then $\operatorname{Bs}\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|=\left\{q_{0}\right\} \cup Z^{\prime}$. We can prove that a general member of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ is also nonsingular along $\left\{q_{0}\right\} \cup Z^{\prime}$ in this case in the same way as above. In the same way, we obtain the same result when $L_{1} \cong L_{2}$ or $L_{2} \cong L_{0}$. Suppose $L_{i} \not \neq L_{j}$ if $i \neq j(i, j=0,1,2)$. There exists a point $p_{2} \in C$ such that $\psi_{04}\left(p_{2}\right)=0$ holds for any global section $\psi_{04} \in H^{0}\left(C, L_{0}^{-1} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \otimes L_{2}^{\otimes 3}\right)$. Let $Z_{2}$ be the curve defined by $X_{0}=X_{1}=0$, and denote $F_{2}:=\pi^{-1}\left(p_{2}\right), q_{2}:=Z_{2} \cap F_{2}$. Then we have $q_{2} \neq q_{0}, q_{1}$ and $\operatorname{Bs}\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|=\left\{q_{0}, q_{1}, q_{2}\right\}$. We can show that a general member of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ is nonsingular at $q_{0}, q_{1}, q_{2}$ in the same way as above.
(II) Let us look at the case where $3 d_{0}<d_{1}+d_{2}$ or ( $3 d_{0}=d_{1}+d_{2}$ and $L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \not \approx L_{1} \otimes L_{2}$ ). Since we have $H^{0}\left(C, L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \otimes L_{2}^{-1}\right)=0$, the coefficient $\psi_{00}$ of $X_{0}^{4}$ in $\Psi$ is 0 . Hence $Z_{0}$ is contained in $\mathrm{Bs}\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$. The other base points are as follows:
(i) There exist no base point except $Z_{0} \Longleftrightarrow-d_{0}+3 d_{1}-d_{2} \geq 2$ or $L_{1}^{\otimes 3} \cong L_{0} \otimes L_{2}$.
(ii) If $-d_{0}+3 d_{1}-d_{2}=1$ and $-d_{0}-d_{1}+3 d_{2} \geq 2$, then $q_{1}$ is a base point of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$.
(iii) If $-d_{0}+3 d_{1}-d_{2}=-d_{0}-d_{1}+3 d_{2}=1$, then $q_{1}$ and $q_{2}$ are base points of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$.
(iv) If $-d_{0}+3 d_{1}-d_{2}=0$ and $L_{1}^{\otimes 3} \not \approx L_{0} \otimes L_{2}$, then we have $\operatorname{Bs}\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|=Z_{0} \cup Z_{1}$.
(i), (ii) and (iii) are trivial. So we prove (iv). First, we have $d_{0}=d_{1}$. Indeed, if we assume $d_{0}<d_{1}$, then we have

$$
3 d_{0}-d_{1}-d_{2}<2 d_{0}-d_{2}<d_{0}+d_{1}-d_{2}<2 d_{1}-d_{2}<-d_{0}+3 d_{1}-d_{2}=0
$$

hence the coefficients of $X_{0}^{4}, \quad X_{0}^{3} X_{1}, \quad X_{0}^{2} X_{1}^{2}, \quad X_{0} X_{1}^{3}, \quad X_{1}^{4}$ vanish, and any $\Psi \in$ $H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(4 T) \otimes \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$ is reducible. Therefore we have $d_{0}=d_{1}$ and hence $2 d_{0}=2 d_{1}=d_{2}$ holds. Since we have $L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \nsubseteq L_{1} \otimes L_{2}$ and $L_{1}^{\otimes 3} \not \approx L_{0} \otimes L_{2}$ by assumption, the coefficients of $X_{0}^{4}$ and $X_{1}^{4}$ are 0 . On the other hand, since the coefficient of one of $X_{0}^{3} X_{1}, X_{0}^{2} X_{1}^{2}, X_{0} X_{1}^{3}$ is not 0 by the assumption of the proposition (the third assumption of (3)), one of $\psi_{10} X_{0}^{3} X_{1}, \psi_{20} X_{0}^{2} X_{1}^{2}$ and $\psi_{30} X_{0} X_{1}^{3}$ gives an effective divisor in $W$. (It is a union of two relative hyperplanes defined by the equations $X_{0}=0, X_{1}=0$.)

Since we have $\operatorname{deg}\left(L_{0}^{-1} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \otimes L_{2}^{\otimes 3}\right)=-d_{0}-d_{1}+3 d_{2}=4 d_{0} \geq 4>2$, we obtain the claim considering the intersection of the divisors defined by the global sections $\psi_{40} X_{2}^{4}$ and one of $\psi_{10} X_{0}^{3} X_{1}, \psi_{20} X_{0}^{2} X_{1}^{2}, \psi_{30} X_{0} X_{1}^{3}$.

We can show that a general member of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ is nonsingular at $q_{1}$ in the case (ii), and at $q_{1}$ and $q_{2}$ in the case (iii) in the same way as above. Hence in the cases (i), (ii) and (iii), it is sufficient to look at the multiplicity of a general member of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ at $Z_{0}$.

Let us look at the case where $2 d_{0}>d_{2}$ or $L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \cong L_{2}$. (When $L_{0} \cong L_{2}$, if we assume $d_{1}=d_{2}$ and $L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \not \approx L_{1}$, further, interchange $L_{1}$ and $L_{2}$ and regard this case as the case $L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \not \approx L_{2}$. Hence, we may assume $L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \cong L_{1}$ when $L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \cong L_{2}$ and $d_{1}=d_{2}$.) Since we have $H^{0}\left(C, L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \otimes L_{2}^{-1}\right) \neq 0$ and $H^{0}\left(C, L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}\right) \neq 0$, a general member of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ is nonsingular at $Z_{0}$ except in the case

$$
2 d_{0}-d_{1}=2 d_{0}-d_{2}=1, \text { and } L_{1} \cong L_{2}
$$

In this case, since we have $L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \cong L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \otimes L_{2}^{-1}$, there exists a point $p \in C$ such that $\psi(p)=0$ holds for any $\psi \in H^{0}\left(C, L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}\right) \cong H^{0}\left(C, L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \otimes L_{2}^{-1}\right)$. Denote $F:=\pi^{-1}(p), q:=Z_{0} \cap F$ and $x_{i}:=X_{i} / X_{0}(i=1,2)$, and let $t$ be a local coordinate around $p$ on $C$. A general $\Psi \in H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(4 T) \otimes \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$ can be written as

$$
\begin{aligned}
\Psi & =t x_{1}+c t x_{2}+\psi_{20} x_{1}^{2}+\psi_{11} x_{1} x_{2}+\psi_{02} x_{2}^{2}+\cdots \\
& =x_{1}\left(t+\psi_{20} x_{1}+\psi_{11} x_{2}+\cdots\right)+c t x_{2}+\psi_{02} x_{2}^{2}+\psi_{03} x_{2}^{3}+\psi_{04} x_{2}^{4}
\end{aligned}
$$

where $c \in \mathbf{C}$ is a constant. Hence the divisor defined by $\Psi=0$ on $W$ has a rational double point of type $A_{1}$ at $q$.

Let us look at the case where $2 d_{0}<d_{2}$ or $\left(2 d_{0}=d_{2}\right.$ and $\left.L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \not \equiv L_{2}\right)$. In this case, the coefficients of $X_{0}^{4}, X_{0}^{3} X_{1}$ are 0 . If $d_{1}=2 d_{0}$ and $L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \cong L_{1}$ hold, then the coefficient of
$X_{0}^{3} X_{2}$ is constant, hence a general member is nonsingular at $Z_{0}$. If $d_{1}<2 d_{0}$ holds, and if we let $p \in C$ be a point such that $\psi_{01}(p)=0$ for $0 \neq \psi_{01} \in H^{0}\left(C, L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}\right), \Psi$ can be written as

$$
\begin{aligned}
\Psi & =t x_{2}+\psi_{20} x_{1}^{2}+\psi_{11} x_{1} x_{2}+\psi_{02} x_{2}^{2}+\cdots \\
& =x_{2}\left(t+\psi_{11} x_{1}+\psi_{02} x_{2}+\cdots\right)+\psi_{20} x_{1}^{2}+\psi_{30} x_{1}^{3}+\psi_{40} x_{1}^{4}
\end{aligned}
$$

around $q$, where $q, t, x_{1}, x_{2}$ are as above. The equation $\Psi=0$ gives a rational double point of type $A_{1}$ at $q$ except in the case

$$
L_{0} \otimes L_{1} \otimes L_{2}^{-1} \cong L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}, \text { and } d_{0}+d_{1}-d_{2}=2 d_{0}-d_{1}=1
$$

In this case, $\psi_{20}=c^{\prime} t$ holds around $q$ for some constant $c^{\prime} \in \mathbf{C}$, and the equation $\Psi=0$ gives a rational double point of type $A_{2}$ at $q$.

In the case (iv), we can show that a general member of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ is irreducible and has at most rational double points of type $A_{1}$ on $Z_{0}$ and $Z_{1}$ in the same way as above. q.e.d.

### 4.1.2 The canonical mappings

We study the canonical mapping of surfaces classified in Theorem 4.1. The triples $\left(d_{0}, d_{1}, d_{2}\right)$ satisfying $p_{g}(S)=d_{0}+d_{1}+d_{2}=4,5,6$ and the conditions in Theorem 4.1 are

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\left(d_{0}, d_{1}, d_{2}\right)=(1,1,2), & \left(p_{g}(S)=4\right), \\
\left(d_{0}, d_{1}, d_{2}\right)=(1,2,2), & \left(p_{g}(S)=5\right), \\
\left(d_{0}, d_{1}, d_{2}\right)=(1,2,3),(2,2,2), & \left(p_{g}(S)=6\right) .
\end{array}
$$

Lemma 4.2 Let $L_{0}, L_{1}, L_{2}$ be invertible sheaves over an elliptic curve $C$, and denote $d_{i}:=\operatorname{deg} L_{i},(i=0,1,2)$. Assume that $L_{0}, L_{1}, L_{2}$ satisfy the conditions of Theorem 4.1. If $\pi: W:=\mathbf{P}(E) \rightarrow C$ is the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle over $C$ associated to $E:=L_{0} \oplus L_{1} \oplus L_{2}$, and $T$ is a tautological divisor such that $\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \cong E$, then $\Phi_{|T|}$ is birational onto its image when one of the following holds.
(i) $d_{0}+d_{1}+d_{2} \geq 7$.
(ii) $\left(d_{0}, d_{1}, d_{2}\right)=(1,2,3)$.
(iii) $\left(d_{0}, d_{1}, d_{2}\right)=(2,2,2)$ and one of $L_{0}, L_{1}, L_{2}$ is not isomorphic to the others.
(iv) $\left(d_{0}, d_{1}, d_{2}\right)=(1,2,2)$ and $L_{1} \neq L_{2}$.

Proof First we show that for any general fiber $F$ of $\pi$, the restriction of $\Phi_{|T|}$ to $F$ gives an isomorphism of $F$ onto its image. It suffices to show that the restriction mapping $H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T)\right) \rightarrow H^{0}\left(F, \mathcal{O}_{F}(T)\right)$ is sujective. We only have to show $H^{1}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T-\right.$ $F))=0$ in view of the exact sequence

$$
0 \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{W}(T-F) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{F}(T) \rightarrow 0
$$

If we denote $q:=\pi(F) \in C$, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& H^{1}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T-F)\right)=H^{1}\left(C, E \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}(-q)\right) \\
& \quad \cong H^{1}\left(C, L_{0} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}(-q)\right) \oplus H^{1}\left(C, L_{1} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}(-q)\right) \oplus H^{1}\left(C, L_{2} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}(-q)\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Since we assume $0<d_{0} \leq d_{1} \leq d_{2}$, this cohomology group vanishes.
In the rest of the proof, we show that there exists a Zariski open subset of $W$ such that any two points in it contained in different fibers are separated by $|T|$.

Since

$$
H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T)\right) \cong H^{0}\left(C, L_{0}\right) \oplus H^{0}\left(C, L_{1}\right) \oplus H^{0}\left(C, L_{2}\right)
$$

if we choose $X_{i} \in H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \otimes \pi^{*} L_{i}^{-1}\right)(i=0,1,2)$ as in the proof of Theorem 4.1, any $\Psi \in H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T)\right)$ can be written as

$$
\Psi=\psi_{0} X_{0}+\psi_{1} X_{1}+\psi_{2} X_{2}, \quad \psi_{i} \in H^{0}\left(C, L_{i}\right)(i=0,1,2) .
$$

If $d_{2} \geq 3$, then $W \backslash\left(X_{2}\right)$ satisfies the above condition, where $\left(X_{2}\right)$ is the divisor defined by $X_{2}$. (Look at all the elements of the form $\psi_{2} X_{2}$.)

If $d_{2}=2$, then we have $\left(d_{0}, d_{1}, d_{2}\right)=(1,2,2),(2,2,2)$.
If $\left(d_{0}, d_{1}, d_{2}\right)=(2,2,2)$, then at least one of $L_{0}, L_{1}, L_{2}$ is not isomorphic to the others. We may assume $L_{1} \not \neq L_{2}$ by renumbering $L_{0}, L_{1}, L_{2}$ if necessary. We see that $W \backslash\left\{\left(X_{1}\right) \cup\left(X_{2}\right)\right\}$ satisfies the above condition, where $\left(X_{i}\right)$ is the divisor defined by $X_{i}(i=1,2)$. (Look at all the elements of the form $\psi_{1} X_{1}, \psi_{2} X_{2}$.)

We obtain the same result when $\left(d_{0}, d_{1}, d_{2}\right)=(1,2,2)$, since we assume $L_{1} \neq L_{2}$ in this case.
q.e.d.

Corollary 4.3 The canonical mapping of any surface $S$ whose existence is guaranteed by Theorem 4.1 and the condition (A) is a birational morphism onto its image if one of the following holds.
(1) $d_{0}+d_{1}+d_{2} \geq 7$ and $d_{0} \geq 2$,
(2) $\left(d_{0}, d_{1}, d_{2}\right)=(2,2,2)$, and one of $L_{0}, L_{1}, L_{2}$ is not isomorphic to the others.

Proof Since $\mathcal{O}_{S^{\prime}} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{W} \omega_{W} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{W} \mathcal{O}_{W}\left(S^{\prime}\right) \cong \omega_{S^{\prime}}$ by the adjunction formula, and since $\omega_{W} \cong \mathcal{O}_{W}(-3 T) \otimes \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E$ and $\mathcal{O}_{W}\left(S^{\prime}\right) \cong \mathcal{O}_{W}(4 T) \otimes \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}$, we have

$$
\omega_{S^{\prime}} \cong \mathcal{O}_{S^{\prime}} \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{W}} \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) .
$$

Furthermore, we have

$$
\operatorname{dim} H^{i}\left(W, \omega_{W}\right)=\operatorname{dim} H^{3-i}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}\right)=\operatorname{dim} H^{3-i}\left(C, \mathcal{O}_{C}\right)=0
$$

for $i=0,1$ by the Serre duality and the Leray spectral sequence. Hence in view of the cohomology long exact sequence associated to the short exact sequence

$$
0 \rightarrow \omega_{W} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \rightarrow \omega_{S^{\prime}} \rightarrow 0
$$

we have

$$
H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T)\right) \cong H^{0}\left(S^{\prime}, \omega_{S^{\prime}}\right)
$$

Since $S^{\prime}$ has at most rational double points as singularities, we have $\Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}=\psi \circ \Phi_{|T|}$, where $\psi: \cdots \rightarrow W$ is a morphism by Theorem 3.2. Since $\psi$ is birational onto its image, if $\Phi_{|T|}$ is birational onto its image, then $\Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}$ is also birational onto its image. Hence the statement about the birationality follows from Lemma 4.2.

We prove that $\Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}$ is holomorphic. Since $d_{0} \geq 2$, we see that $\mathrm{Bs}|T|=\emptyset$ by considering all the elements in $H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T)\right)$ of the form $\psi_{0} X_{0}, \psi_{1} X_{1}, \psi_{2} X_{2}$. Hence $\left|K_{S}\right|$ also has no base point.

Corollary 4.4 The complete linear system of the canonical bundle of any surface $S$ whose existence is guaranteed by Theorem 4.1 and condition (A) has only one isolated base point, and its canonical mapping is birational onto its image, if one of the following holds:
(1) $\left(d_{0}, d_{1}, d_{2}\right)=(1,2,5)$,
(2) $\left(d_{0}, d_{1}, d_{2}\right)=(1,2,4)$,
(3) $\left(d_{0}, d_{1}, d_{2}\right)=(1,2,3)$,
(4) $\left(d_{0}, d_{1}, d_{2}\right)=(1,2,2)$ and $L_{1} \neq L_{2}$.

Furthermore, its canonical image is non-normal.
Proof We use our notation in Theorem 4.1 and Corollary 4.3.
Under the assumption of the corollary, the curve $Z_{0} \subset W$ defined by $X_{1}=X_{2}=0$ is contained in the set of base points of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ by the proof of Proposition 4.1. Furthermore, we can show that the point $q_{0} \in W$ defined by $\psi_{0}=X_{1}=X_{2}=0$ satisfies $\mathrm{Bs}|T|=\left\{q_{0}\right\}$ in the same way as in Corollary 4.3. Since $q_{0} \in Z_{0}$, the complete linear system of the canonical bundle of a general member of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ has only one base point $q_{0}$. The birationality of the canonical mapping can be proved in the same way as in the proof of Corollary 4.3.

The restriction of $|T|$ to the fiber $F_{0}$ containing $q_{0}$ can be regarded as a subsystem of the complete linear system of $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{2}}(1)$ consisting of all lines going through $q_{0}$. Each line of this system intersects the fiber $\mathcal{F}$ of a general member $S$ of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ at four points, one of which is $q_{0}$. Hence we have $\operatorname{deg}\left(\left.\Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}\right|_{\mathcal{F}}\right)=3$, and the canonical image of $S$ is non-normal by Zariski's main theorem.
q.e.d.

Lemma 4.5 If $\left(d_{0}, d_{1}, d_{2}\right)=(2,2,2)$ and $L_{0} \cong L_{1} \cong L_{2}$, then $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{|T|}=2$ holds.

Proof If we denote $\nu:=\Phi_{\left|L_{0}\right|}: C \rightarrow \mathbf{P}^{1}$, we have $L_{0} \cong \nu^{*} \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{1}(1)}$, and hence
 following commutative diagram:

$$
\begin{array}{rll}
W & \xrightarrow{\tilde{\nu}} & W_{0} \\
\pi \downarrow & & \downarrow \pi_{0} \\
C & & \nu
\end{array} \mathbf{P}^{1}
$$

If we let $T_{0}$ to be a tautological divisor with $\pi_{0 *} \mathcal{O}_{W_{0}}\left(T_{0}\right) \cong \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{1}(1)^{\oplus 3}}$, then we have $\tilde{\nu}^{*} T_{0} \sim T$, and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T)\right)=\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(C, L_{0}\right)^{\oplus 3}=6 \\
& \operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(W_{0}, \mathcal{O}_{W_{0}}\left(T_{0}\right)\right)=\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(\mathbf{P}^{1}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{1}(1)}(1)\right)^{\oplus 3}=6,
\end{aligned}
$$

and hence, we get $\Phi_{|T|}=\Phi_{\left|T_{0}\right|} \circ \tilde{\nu}$. Since $\Phi_{\left|T_{0}\right|}$ gives an embedding of $W_{0}$ into $\mathbf{P}^{5}$, we have $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{|T|}=2$.
q.e.d.

Proposition 4.6 Let the notation and the assumption be as in Lemma 4.5. Then the canonical mapping of a general member of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ gives a double covering over a surface of degree 9 in $\mathbf{P}^{5}$.

Proof Since $\mathcal{O}_{C}(D) \cong \operatorname{det} E \cong \nu^{*}\left(\operatorname{det}\left(\mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{1}}(1)^{\oplus 3}\right)\right)$, we obtain

$$
\mathcal{O}_{W}(4 T) \otimes \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee} \cong \tilde{\nu}^{*}\left(\mathcal{O}_{W_{0}}\left(4 T_{0}\right) \otimes \pi_{0}^{*} \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{1}}(-3)\right) .
$$

Since

$$
\begin{gathered}
\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(4 T) \otimes \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)=\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(C, S^{4} E \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right) \\
=\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(C, L_{0}^{\oplus 15}\right)=15 \operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(C, L_{0}\right)=30
\end{gathered}
$$

and

$$
\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(W_{0}, \mathcal{O}_{W_{0}}\left(4 T_{0}\right) \otimes \pi_{0}^{*} \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{1}}(-3)\right)=15 \operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(\mathbf{P}^{1}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{1}}(1)\right)=30,
$$

a general member of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ is a pull-back of some member of $\left|4 T_{0}-\pi_{0}^{*} D_{0}\right|$, where $D_{0} \in \operatorname{Div}\left(\mathbf{P}^{1}\right)$ is a divisor of degree 3 . Hence, the canonical mappings of irreducible and nonsingular members of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ are of degree 2. Since $|T|$ has no base point, we obtain the claim on the degree of the image of $S$ by $\Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}$.

Remark The surfaces in Propositon 4.6 can be constructed in another way as follows:

Let $B_{1}, B_{2} \subset \mathbf{P}^{2}$ be nonsingular quartic curves intersecting each other at sixteen points $A_{1}, \cdots, A_{16}$ transversally. If $B_{3}$ and $B_{4}$ are nonsingular members of the pencil generated by $B_{1}$ and $B_{2}$, then $B_{1}, B_{2}, B_{3}$ and $B_{4}$ intersect one another at $A_{1}, \cdots, A_{16}$.

Let $\xi: X \rightarrow \mathbf{P}^{2}$ be the blowing-up at $A_{1}, \cdots, A_{16}, \tilde{B}_{i}(i=1, \cdots, 16)$ the proper transform of $B_{i}$, and denote $\mathcal{E}_{i}:=\xi^{-1}\left(A_{i}\right)$. We have $\xi^{*} B_{i}=\tilde{B}_{i}+\sum_{i=1}^{16} \mathcal{E}_{i}$.
$B:=B_{1}+B_{2}+B_{3}+B_{4} \sim 16 H$ holds, where $H \subset \mathbf{P}^{2}$ is a hyperplane. Since $\xi^{*} B=\tilde{B}_{1}+\tilde{B}_{2}+\tilde{B}_{3}+\tilde{B}_{4}+4 \sum_{i=1}^{16} \mathcal{E}_{i}$, we have $\tilde{B}_{1}+\tilde{B}_{2}+\tilde{B}_{3}+\tilde{B}_{4} \sim 16 \xi^{*} H-4 \sum_{i=1}^{16}$. Hence the double covering $S \rightarrow X$ branched along $\tilde{B}_{1}+\tilde{B}_{2}+\tilde{B}_{3}+\tilde{B}_{4}$ can be constructed. This $S$ coincides with the surface of Proposition 4.6. Cleariy $S$ is nonsingular by construction.

In the case $\left(d_{0}, d_{1}, d_{2}\right)=(1,2,2)$ and $L_{1} \cong L_{2}$, we may assume $L_{1} \cong L_{0}^{\otimes 2}$ by Theorem 4.1.

Lemma 4.7 Let $L_{0}, L_{1}, L_{2}$ be invertible sheaves over an elliptic curve $C, \pi: W:=$ $\mathbf{P}(E) \rightarrow C$ the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle associated to the locally free sheaf $E:=L_{0} \oplus L_{1} \oplus L_{2}$, and $T$ the tautological divisor with $\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \cong E$, and denote $d_{i}:=\operatorname{deg} L_{i}(i=0,1,2)$. If $L_{0}, L_{1}, L_{2}$ satisfy one of the following (i) and (ii), then $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{|T|}=2$ holds:
(i) $\left(d_{0}, d_{1}, d_{2}\right)=(1,2,2)$ and $L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \cong L_{1} \cong L_{2}$.
(ii) $\left(d_{0}, d_{1}, d_{2}\right)=(1,1,2)$.

Proof We use the elementary transformation of $W$ by Maruyama [15, Chapter 1]. First, we consider the case (i). Since we have

$$
H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T)\right) \cong H^{0}\left(C, L_{0}\right) \oplus H^{0}\left(C, L_{1}\right) \oplus H^{0}\left(C, L_{2}\right)
$$

if we choose $X_{0} \in H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \otimes \pi^{*} L_{0}^{-1}\right)$ and $X_{1}, X_{2} \in H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \otimes \pi^{*} L_{1}^{-1}\right)$ so that they give homogeneous coordinates for each fiber of $\pi$, then any $X \in$ $H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T)\right)$ can be written as

$$
X=\psi_{0} X_{0}+\psi_{1} X_{1}+\psi_{2} X_{2} \quad \psi_{0} \in H^{0}\left(C, L_{0}\right), \psi_{1}, \psi_{2} \in H^{0}\left(C, L_{1}\right)
$$

Since $\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(C, L_{0}\right)=1$, if we let $q \in W$ to be the point defined by $\psi_{0}=X_{1}=X_{2}=0$, we have $\operatorname{Bs}|T|=\{q\}$. Let $p \in C$ be the point satisfying $L_{0} \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}(p)$, and denote $E^{\prime}:=\mathcal{O}_{C} \oplus L_{1} \oplus L_{1}$ and $F^{\prime}:=\left(L_{1} \oplus L_{1}\right) \otimes \mathcal{O}_{p}$. We have the following commutative diagram:


Since the homomorphism $E \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{p}(p)$ is surjective, we have a subvariety $\mathbf{P}\left(\mathcal{O}_{p}(p)\right) \hookrightarrow$ $W=\mathbf{P}(E)$, which coincides with $q$. Since the homomorphism $E^{\prime} \rightarrow F^{\prime}$ is also surjective,
if we let $\pi^{\prime}: W^{\prime}:=\mathbf{P}\left(E^{\prime}\right) \rightarrow C$ to be the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle associated to $E^{\prime}$, then we have a subvariety $\mathbf{P}\left(F^{\prime}\right) \hookrightarrow W^{\prime}$ contained in a fiber over $p$ with respect to $\pi^{\prime}$. We have the following commutative diagram by Maruyama's result:

where $\phi: \bar{W} \rightarrow W$ is the blowing-up at $q$, and $\phi^{\prime}: \bar{W} \rightarrow W^{\prime}$ is the blowing-up along $\mathbf{P}\left(F^{\prime}\right)$. If we let $T^{\prime}$ to be the tautological divisor of $W^{\prime}$ with $\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W^{\prime}}\left(T^{\prime}\right) \cong E^{\prime}$, and $\bar{T}$ the proper transform of $T$ by $\phi$, then the image of $\bar{T}$ in $W^{\prime}$ by $\phi^{\prime}$ is linearly equivarent to $T^{\prime}$. We have the following commutative diagram:

where $\pi_{0}: W_{0} \rightarrow \mathbf{P}^{1}$ is the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle associated to a locally free sheaf $E_{0}:=\mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{1}} \oplus$ $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{1}}(1) \oplus \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{1}}(1)$. If $T_{0}$ is the tautological divisor of $W_{0}$ satisfying $\pi_{0 *} \mathcal{O}_{W_{0}}\left(T_{0}\right) \cong E_{0}$, then we have $\Phi^{*} T_{0} \sim T^{\prime}$, and

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(W^{\prime}, \mathcal{O}_{W^{\prime}}\left(T^{\prime}\right)\right) & =\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(C, E^{\prime}\right) \\
\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(W_{0}, \mathcal{O}_{W_{0}}\left(T_{0}\right)\right) & =\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(\mathbf{P}^{1}, E_{0}\right)
\end{aligned}=5
$$

and hence $\Phi_{\left|T^{\prime}\right|}=\Phi_{\left|T_{0}\right|} \circ \Phi$ holds. We show that $\Phi_{\left|T_{0}\right|}$ is a birational morphism onto the image. If $F_{0}$ is any fiber of $\pi_{0}$, we can prove that $\left.\Phi_{\left|T_{0}\right|}\right|_{F_{0}}$ is an isomorphism of $F_{0}$ onto the image in the same way as in Lemma 4.2. Since $\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(W_{0}, \mathcal{O}_{W_{0}}\left(T_{0}-F_{0}\right)\right)=2$, there exists a section $C_{0}$ of $\pi_{0}$ such that $\mathrm{Bs}\left|T_{0}-F_{0}\right|=C_{0}$. Let $p, q \in W_{0} \backslash C_{0}$ be any two points contained in different fibers. If $T_{0}^{\prime} \in\left|T_{0}-F_{0}\right|$ is a member which does not contain $q$, and if $F_{p}$ is the fiber of $\pi_{0}$ containing $p$, then $T_{0}^{\prime}+F_{0} \in\left|T_{0}\right|$ contains $p$ but not $q$, i.e., $p$ and $q$ are separated by $\left|T_{0}\right|$. Hence $\Phi_{\left|T_{0}\right|}$ is a birational morphism. Therefore we have $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{\left|T^{\prime}\right|}=\operatorname{deg} \Phi=2$, and $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{|T|}=2$ holds.

Next, we consider the case (ii).
Assume $L_{0} \not \not L_{1}$. As in the case (i), any $X \in H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T)\right)$ can be written as

$$
X=\psi_{0} X_{0}+\psi_{1} X_{1}+\psi_{2} X_{2} \quad \psi_{i} \in H^{0}\left(C, L_{i}\right)(i=0,1,2)
$$

Since $\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(C, L_{0}\right)=\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(C, L_{1}\right)=1$ and $L_{0} \not \equiv L_{1}$, if we let $q_{0}, q_{1} \in W$ to be the points defined by $\psi_{0}=X_{1}=X_{2}=0$ and $\psi_{1}=X_{2}=X_{0}=0$, respectively, we have $\operatorname{Bs}|T|=\left\{q_{0}, q_{1}\right\}$. If we let $\pi^{\prime}: W^{\prime}:=\mathbf{P}\left(E^{\prime}\right) \rightarrow C$ to be the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle associated
to the locally free sheaf $E^{\prime}:=\mathcal{O}_{C} \oplus \mathcal{O}_{C} \oplus L_{2}$ over $C, T^{\prime}$ the tautological divisor with $\pi_{*}^{\prime} \mathcal{O}_{W^{\prime}}(T) \cong E^{\prime}, \phi: \bar{W} \rightarrow W$ the blowing-up at $q_{0}$ and $q_{1}$, and $\pi_{0}: W_{0}:=\mathbf{P}\left(E_{0}\right) \rightarrow \mathbf{P}^{1}$ the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle associated to a locally free sheaf $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{1}} \oplus \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{1}} \oplus \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{1}(1)}$ over $\mathbf{P}^{1}$, then we obtain a commutative diagram similar to that in the case (i). Therefore, there exists a blowing down $\phi^{\prime}: \bar{W} \rightarrow W^{\prime}$ contracting the proper transform of the fibers of $\pi$ containing $q_{0}$ and $q_{1}$ to lines. The image of the proper transform of $T$ by $\phi$ in $W^{\prime}$ is linearly equivalent to $T^{\prime}$. If $\Phi$ is as in (i), and $T_{0}$ is the tautological divisor of $W_{0}$ satisfying $\pi_{0 *} \mathcal{O}_{W_{0}}\left(T_{0}\right) \cong E_{0}$, then we have $\Phi^{*} T_{0} \sim T^{\prime}$ and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(W_{0}, \mathcal{O}_{W_{0}}\left(T_{0}\right)\right)=\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(\mathbf{P}^{1}, E_{0}\right)=4 \\
& \operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(W^{\prime}, \mathcal{O}_{W^{\prime}}\left(T^{\prime}\right)\right)=\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(C, E^{\prime}\right)=4,
\end{aligned}
$$

and hence $\Phi_{\left|T^{\prime}\right|}=\Phi_{\left|T_{0}\right|} \circ \Phi$ holds. We can prove that $\Phi_{\left|T_{0}\right|}$ is a birational morphism onto the image in the same way as in the case $E_{0}:=\mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{1}} \oplus \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{1}}(1) \oplus \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{1}(1)}$, so we have $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{\left|T^{\prime}\right|}=\operatorname{deg} \Phi=2$. Consequently, $\Phi_{|T|}=2$ holds.

Assume $L_{0} \cong L_{1}$. Since $\pi\left(q_{0}\right)=\pi\left(q_{1}\right)$ in this case, if we let $p_{0}$ be this point, we have $L_{0} \cong L_{1} \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}\left(p_{0}\right)$. If $Z \subset W$ is the curve defined by $\psi_{0}=X_{2}=0$, then $\operatorname{Bs}|T|=Z$ holds. We obtain the same commutative diagram as above, and in this case, $\phi: \bar{W} \rightarrow W$ is the blowing-up along $Z$. We can show that $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{|T|}=2$ by the same argument as in the case $L_{0} \not \neq L_{1}$ of (ii).
q.e.d.

When $\left(d_{0}, d_{1}, d_{2}\right)=(1,2,2)$ and $L_{1} \cong L_{2}$ hold, if we denote $\bar{Y}:=\phi^{-1}(q)$, then we have $\phi^{*} T \sim \bar{T}+\bar{Y}$. Let $\bar{S}$ be the proper transform of $S$ by $\phi$. Since $S$ is nonsingular at $q$, we have $\phi^{*} S=\bar{S}+\bar{Y}$. On the other hand, since $\phi^{*} S \sim \phi^{*}\left(4 T-\pi^{*} D\right) \sim 4 \bar{T}+4 \bar{Y}-\phi^{*} \pi^{*} D$, we obtain $\bar{S} \sim 4 \bar{T}+3 \bar{Y}-\phi^{*} \pi^{*} D$. The image of $\bar{Y}$ in $W^{\prime}$ is a fiber $Y$ of $\pi^{\prime}$. Then the image $S^{\prime}$ of $\bar{S}$ in $W^{\prime}$ is linearly equivalent to $4 T^{\prime}+3 Y-\pi^{\prime *} D$, which is linearly equivalent to $4 T^{\prime}-2 \pi^{\prime *} p$, since $L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \cong L_{1}$ and $\pi^{\prime}(Y)=p$.

When $\left(d_{0}, d_{1}, d_{2}\right)=(1,1,2)$ and $L_{0} \neq L_{1}$ hold, if we denote $\bar{Y}_{i}:=\phi^{-1}\left(q_{i}\right) \quad(i=$ $0,1)$, then we have $\phi^{*} T \sim \bar{T}+Y_{0}+Y_{1}$. Hence we obtain $\bar{S} \sim 4 T^{\prime}-2 \pi^{*} p_{0}$ or $\bar{S} \sim$ $4 T^{\prime}-2 \pi^{*} p_{1}$ by an argument similar to that above. (In this case, one of $L_{0}^{\otimes 2}$ and $L_{1}^{\otimes 2}$ is isomorphic to $L_{2}$ by Theorem 4.1. If $L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \cong L_{2}$, then $\bar{S} \sim 4 T^{\prime}-2 \pi^{\prime *} p_{0}$ holds, while if $L_{1}^{\otimes 2} \cong L_{2}$, then $\bar{S} \sim 4 T^{\prime}-2 \pi^{*} p_{1}$ holds.) We obtain the same result when $\left(d_{0}, d_{1}, d_{2}\right)=$ $(1,1,2)$ and $L_{0} \cong L_{1}$.

Proposition 4.8 Let the notation and the assumption be as in Lemma 4.7. Then the minimal resolution of a general member of the complete linear system $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ is canonical.

Proof We use the notation of Lemma 4.7.
First, we consider the case $E \cong L_{0} \oplus L_{1} \oplus L_{1},\left(L_{0} \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(1,1), L_{1} \cong L_{0}^{\otimes 2}\right)$. Let $S \in\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ be a general member. We may assume $S$ to be nonsingular. Furthermore, let $\bar{S}$ be a proper transform of $S$ by $\phi$, and denote $S^{\prime}:=\phi^{\prime}(\bar{S}), S_{0}:=\Phi\left(S^{\prime}\right) \subset W_{0}$.

Furthermore, denote $h^{\prime}:=\Phi_{\mid S^{\prime}}: S^{\prime} \rightarrow S_{0}$. Then we have $\operatorname{deg} h^{\prime}=\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}$. There is nothing to prove if $h^{\prime}$ is birational onto its image. Thus suppose $h^{\prime}$ is not birational. Hence $h^{\prime}$ is an unramified two-to-one covering outside the intersection with $S^{\prime}$ of the ramification locus $F_{0}+F_{1}+F_{2}+F_{3}$ of $\Phi$, where $F_{i}:=\pi^{\prime-1}\left(p_{i}\right)(i=0,1,2,3)$ with $p_{0}, p_{1}, p_{2}, p_{3} \in C$ the ramification points of $\Phi_{\left|L_{1}\right|}: C \rightarrow \mathbf{P}^{1}$. Hence the morphism

$$
h_{\mid S^{\prime} \backslash \bigcup_{i=0}^{3} F_{i}^{\prime}}^{\prime}: S^{\prime} \backslash \bigcup_{i=0}^{3} F_{i}^{\prime} \rightarrow \tilde{S}_{0}:=h^{\prime}\left(S^{\prime} \backslash \bigcup_{i=0}^{3} F_{i}^{\prime}\right)\left(\subset S_{0}\right)
$$

is an unramified two-to-one covering. On the elementary transform $S$ of $S^{\prime}$, we thus have an unramified morphism

$$
h: S \backslash \cup_{i=0}^{3} F_{i} \rightarrow \tilde{S}_{0}
$$

where $F_{i}:=\pi^{-1}\left(p_{i}\right) \subset(i=0,1,2,3)$. Let $C_{0} \subset W$ be a curve which is the base locus of $\mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \otimes \pi^{*} L_{1}^{-1} . S$ is a canonical surface if $h$ is one-to-one at a point $q \in S \backslash\left(C_{0} \cup_{i=0}^{3} F_{i}\right)$. Fix one such point $q$ and let $q^{\prime} \in W$ be the other point which is mapped to $\Phi_{|T|}(q)$ by the two-to-one map $\Phi_{|T|}$. We show that $q^{\prime}$ does not belong to a general $S$.

Since

$$
H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \otimes \pi^{*} L_{0}^{-1}\right) \cong H^{0}\left(C, \mathcal{O}_{C}\right) \oplus H^{0}\left(C, L_{0}\right) \oplus H^{0}\left(C, L_{0}\right)
$$

we obtain a global section $X_{0} \in H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \otimes \pi^{*} L_{0}^{-1}\right)$ such that $X_{0}$ vanishes at $q$ and $q^{\prime}$ and that the divisor $\left(X_{0}\right)$ is irreducible. Similarly, since

$$
H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \otimes \pi^{*} L_{1}^{-1}\right) \cong H^{0}\left(C, \mathcal{O}_{C}\right) \oplus H^{0}\left(C, \mathcal{O}_{C}\right)
$$

we obtain a global section $X_{1} \in H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \otimes \pi^{*} L_{1}^{-1}\right)$ such that $X_{1}$ vanishies at $q$ and $q^{\prime}$ and that the divisor $\left(X_{1}\right)$ is irreducible. Any $X_{2} \in H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \otimes \pi^{*} L_{1}^{-1}\right) \backslash\left\{0, X_{1}\right\}$ does not vanish at $q$ and $q^{\prime}$, and the divisor $\left(X_{2}\right)$ is irreducible. $X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}$ give homogeneous coordinates of each fiber of $\pi$. Since

$$
H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(4 T) \otimes \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right) \cong H^{0}\left(C, S^{4} E \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right) \cong \bigoplus_{\substack{i, j \geq 0 \\ i+j \leq 4}} H^{0}\left(C, L_{0}^{\otimes(i+j-1)}\right)
$$

if $\Psi \in H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(4 T) \otimes \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$ is a global section defining $S$, then $\Psi$ can be written as

$$
\Psi=\sum_{\substack{i, j \geq 0 \\ i+j \leq 4}} \psi_{i j} X_{0}^{4-i-j} X_{1}^{i} X_{2}^{j}, \quad \psi_{i j} \in H^{0}\left(C, L_{0}^{\otimes(i+j-1)}\right)
$$

We have $\Psi\left(q^{\prime}\right)=\psi_{04}\left(q^{\prime}\right) X_{2}\left(q^{\prime}\right)^{4}$ by our choice of $X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}$. Hence $q^{\prime}$ is not contained in $S$ if and only if $\psi_{04}\left(q^{\prime}\right) \neq 0$ holds. Since $S$ is general, we are done.

Next, we consider the case $E \cong L_{0} \oplus L_{1} \oplus L_{2},\left(L_{0}, L_{1} \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(1,1), L_{2} \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(1,2)\right)$. In this case, at least one of $L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}, L_{0}^{\otimes 2}, L_{0} \otimes L_{1}, L_{1}^{\otimes 2}$ and $L_{0}^{-1} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3}$ is isomorphic to $L_{2}$.

Let $S \in\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ be a general member. We may assume $S$ to be nonsingular. Furthermore, let $S^{\prime} \subset W^{\prime}, S_{0} \subset W_{0}$ and $h^{\prime}:=\Phi_{\mid S^{\prime}}: S^{\prime} \rightarrow S_{0}$ be as above.

If $L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}, L_{0}^{-1} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3} \not \not L_{2}$, then $\mathrm{Bs}\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ consists of two points $\left\{q_{0}, q_{1}\right\}$, and these are contained in $\operatorname{Bs}\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$. Denote $\mathcal{E}_{i}:=\phi^{-1}\left(q_{i}\right)(i=0,1)$, and let $\bar{T}, \bar{S}$ be the proper transform of $T, S$ by $\phi$, respectively. Then since

$$
\bar{S} \sim 4 \bar{T}+3 \mathcal{E}_{0}+3 \mathcal{E}_{1}-\phi^{*} \pi^{*} D
$$

we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathcal{O}_{W^{\prime}}\left(S^{\prime}\right) \cong \mathcal{O}_{W^{\prime}}\left(4 T^{\prime}\right) \otimes \pi^{\prime *}\left(L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{0}^{-1} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \otimes L_{2}^{-1}\right) \\
& \quad \cong \mathcal{O}_{W^{\prime}}\left(4 T^{\prime}\right) \otimes \pi^{\prime *}\left(L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 2} \otimes L_{2}^{-1}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

We have $\operatorname{deg}\left(L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 2} \otimes L_{2}^{-1}\right)=2$. If $L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 2} \otimes L_{2}^{-1} \not \equiv L_{2}$ holds, this invertible sheaf cannot be the pull-back by $\Phi$ of any invertible sheaf on $W_{0}$, and hence $S$ is canonical. We consider the case $L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 2} \otimes L_{2}^{-1} \cong L_{2}$. Let $p_{0}, p_{1}, p_{2}, p_{3} \in C$ be the ramification points of $\Phi_{\left|L_{2}\right|}: C \rightarrow \mathbf{P}^{1}$, and denote $F_{i}^{\prime}:=\pi^{\prime-1}\left(p_{i}\right)(i=0,1,2,3)$. There is nothing to prove if $h^{\prime}$ is birational onto its image. Thus suppose $h^{\prime}$ is not birational. Hence $h^{\prime}$ is an unramified two-to-one covering outside the intersection with $S^{\prime}$ of the ramification locus $F_{0}^{\prime}+F_{1}^{\prime}+F_{2}^{\prime}+F_{3}^{\prime}$ of $\Phi$. Hence, the morphism

$$
h_{S^{\prime} \backslash \bigcup_{i=0}^{3} F_{i}^{\prime}}^{\prime}: S^{\prime} \backslash \bigcup_{i=0}^{3} F_{i}^{\prime} \rightarrow \tilde{S}_{0}:=h^{\prime}\left(S^{\prime} \backslash \bigcup_{i=0}^{3} F_{i}^{\prime}\right)\left(\subset S_{0}\right)
$$

is an unramified two-to-one covering. On the elementary transform $S$ of $S^{\prime}$, we thus have an unramified morphism

$$
h: S \backslash \bigcup_{i=0}^{3} F_{i} \rightarrow \tilde{S}_{0}
$$

where $F_{i}:=\pi^{-1}\left(p_{i}\right)(i=0,1,2,3)$. Let $X_{2} \in H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \otimes \pi^{*} L_{2}^{-1}\right) \cong \mathbf{C}$ be a non-zero element, and fix any point $q \in S \backslash\left(\left(X_{2}\right) \cup\left(\bigcup_{i=0}^{3} F_{i}\right)\right)$. Let $q^{\prime} \in W$ be the other point which is mapped to $\Phi_{|T|}(q)$ by the two-to-one map $\Phi_{|T|}$. Since we have $\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \otimes \pi^{*} L_{i}^{-1}\right)=2$ for $i=0,1$, there exist $X_{i} \in H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \otimes\right.$ $\left.\pi^{*} L_{i}^{-1}\right)(i=0,1)$ such that the divisors $\left(X_{i}\right)$ are irreducible and that $X_{i}$ vanish at $q$ and $q^{\prime}$. Then $X_{0}, X_{1}$ and $X_{2}$ give homogeneous coordinates of each fiber of $\pi$. If $\Psi \in H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(4 T) \otimes \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$ is a global section defining $S$, then $\Psi$ can be written as

$$
\Psi=\sum_{\substack{i, j \geq 0 \\ i+j \leq 4}} \psi_{i j} X_{0}^{4-i-j} X_{1}^{i} X_{2}^{j}, \quad \psi_{i j} \in H^{0}\left(C, L_{0}^{\otimes(3-i-j)} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes(i-1)} \otimes L_{2}^{\otimes(j-1)}\right)
$$

We have $\Psi\left(q^{\prime}\right)=\psi_{04}\left(q^{\prime}\right) X_{2}\left(q^{\prime}\right)^{4}$ by our choice of $X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}$. Hence $q^{\prime}$ is not contained in $S$ if and only if $\psi_{04}\left(q^{\prime}\right) \neq 0$. Since $S$ is general, we are done.

In the case $L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \cong L_{2}$ and $L_{0}^{-1} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3} \not \approx L_{2}$, Bs $|T|$ consists of two points $q_{0}, q_{1}$. One of them is contained in $\operatorname{Bs}\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$, while the other is not. We may assume $q_{1} \in \mathrm{Bs}\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$. In the same notation as above, since

$$
\bar{S} \sim 4 \bar{T}+4 \mathcal{E}_{0}+3 \mathcal{E}_{1}-\phi^{*} \pi^{*} D
$$

we have

$$
\mathcal{O}_{W^{\prime}}\left(S^{\prime}\right) \cong \mathcal{O}_{W^{\prime}}\left(4 T^{\prime}\right) \otimes \pi^{\prime *}\left(L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 2} \otimes L_{2}^{-1}\right)
$$

Since $\operatorname{deg}\left(L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 2} \otimes L_{2}^{-1}\right)=3$, this cannot be the pull-back by $\Phi$ of any invertible sheaf on $W_{0}$. We can obtain the same result in the case $L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \not \approx L_{2}$ and $L_{0}^{-1} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3} \cong L_{2}$.

Finally, we consider the case $L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \cong L_{0}^{-1} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3} \cong L_{2}$. If $L_{0} \not \neq L_{1}$ holds, then $\mathrm{Bs}|T|$ consists of two points. Since $\operatorname{Bs}\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|=\emptyset$, and since $S$ is generic, $S$ does not contain these two points. Hence, in the same notation as above, we have

$$
\mathcal{O}_{W^{\prime}}\left(S^{\prime}\right) \cong \mathcal{O}_{W^{\prime}}\left(4 T^{\prime}\right) \otimes \pi^{\prime *}\left(L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{2}^{-1}\right)
$$

$\operatorname{deg}\left(L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{2}^{-1}\right)=4$ holds, and if $L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{2}^{-1} \neq L_{2}$ holds, then the above invertible sheaf on $W^{\prime}$ cannot be the pull-back by $\Phi$ of any invertible sheaf on $W_{0}$, and hence $S$ is a canonical surface. When $L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{2}^{-1} \cong L_{2}$, we can prove $S$ to be canonical in the same way as in the case $L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \not \not L_{2}, L_{0}^{-1} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3} \not \approx L_{2}$ and $L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 2} \otimes L_{2}^{-1} \cong L_{2}$. When $L_{0} \cong L_{1}$, we can prove $S$ to be canonical in the same way as above.
q.e.d.

Remark In the situation of Proposition 4.8, we have a posibility that there exist special members, with at most rational double points as singularities, of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ whose canonical mapping is of degree 2 .

Proposition 4.9 Let $L_{0}, L_{1}$ and $L_{2}$ be invertible sheaves over an elliptic curve $C$, and denote $d_{i}:=\operatorname{deg} L_{i}(i=0,1,2)$. Assume that $d_{0}=d_{1}=d_{2}=1$ holds and one of $L_{0}, L_{1}$ and $L_{2}$ is not isomorphic to any of the others. Let $\pi: W:=\mathbf{P}(E) \rightarrow C$ be the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle associated to the locally free sheaf $E:=L_{0} \oplus L_{1} \oplus L_{2}, T$ a tautological divisor with $\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \cong E, D \in \operatorname{Div}(C)$ a divisor with $\mathcal{O}_{C}(D) \cong \operatorname{det} E$, and $S \in\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right| a$ general irreducible nonsingular member. We have the following about $\Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}$ :
(1) If $L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \not \approx L_{1} \otimes L_{2}, L_{1}^{\otimes 2} \not \neq L_{2} \otimes L_{0}$ and $L_{2}^{\otimes 2} \not \approx L_{0} \otimes L_{1}$, then $\Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}$ gives a covering of degree 9 onto $\mathbf{P}^{2}$.
(2) If only one of $L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \cong L_{1} \otimes L_{2}, L_{1}^{\otimes 2} \cong L_{2} \otimes L_{0}$ and $L_{2}^{\otimes 2} \cong L_{0} \otimes L_{1}$ holds, then $\left|K_{S}\right|$ has one isolated base point, and $\Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}$ gives a covering of degree 8 over $\mathbf{P}^{2}$.
(3) If all of $L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \cong L_{1} \otimes L_{2}, L_{1}^{\otimes 2} \cong L_{2} \otimes L_{0}$ and $L_{2}^{\otimes 2} \cong L_{0} \otimes L_{1}$ hold, then $\left|K_{S}\right|$ has three isolated fixed points, and $\Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}$ gives a covering of degree 6 over $\mathbf{P}^{2}$.

Proof We investigate the sets of base points of $|T|$ and $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$.
First we assume that $L_{0}, L_{1}, L_{2}$ are pairwise non-isomorphic. Since any $X \in$ $H^{0}(W, \mathcal{O}(T))$ can be written as

$$
X=\psi_{0} X_{0}+\psi_{1} X_{1}+\psi_{2} X_{2}, \quad \psi_{i} \in H^{0}\left(C, L_{i}\right)
$$

as in the proof of Lemma 4.2, we have $\operatorname{Bs}|T|=\left\{q_{0}, q_{1}, q_{2}\right\}$, where $q_{0}, q_{1}$ and $q_{2}$ are the points defined by $\psi_{0}=X_{1}=X_{2}=0, \psi_{1}=X_{2}=X_{0}=0$ and $\psi_{2}=X_{0}=X_{1}=0$, respectively. Since any $\Psi \in H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}(4 T) \otimes \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$ can be written as

$$
\Psi=\sum_{\substack{i, j \geq 0 \\ i+j \leq 4}} \psi_{i j} X_{0}^{4-i-j} X_{1}^{i} X_{2}^{j}, \quad \psi_{i j} \in H^{0}\left(C, L_{0}^{\otimes(3-i-j)} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes(i-1)} \otimes L_{2}^{\otimes(j-1)}\right)
$$

as in the proof of Theorem 4.1, we have $\operatorname{Bs}\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|=\left\{q_{0}^{\prime}, q_{1}^{\prime}, q_{2}^{\prime}\right\}$, where $q_{0}^{\prime}, q_{1}^{\prime}$ and $q_{2}^{\prime}$ are the points defined by $\psi_{00}=X_{1}=X_{2}=0, \psi_{40}=X_{2}=X_{0}=0$ and $\psi_{04}=X_{0}=X_{1}=0$, respectively.

Therefore in the case (1), we have $\operatorname{Bs}|T| \cap \operatorname{Bs}\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|=\emptyset$, and hence $\Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}$ is a surjective morphism onto $\mathbf{P}^{2}$. Since $K_{S}^{2}=9$ and the degree of $\mathbf{P}^{2}$ is equal to 1 , we are done in the case (1).

Next, we consider the case (2). We only have to consider the case $L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \cong L_{1} \otimes L_{2}$ by renumbering of $L_{0}, L_{1}$ and $L_{2}$ if necessary. In this case, all the members of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ go through $q_{0}$. Since $S \in\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ is general, it does not contain $q_{1}$ and $q_{2}$.

If we denote $E^{\prime}:=\mathcal{O}_{C} \oplus \mathcal{O}_{C} \oplus \mathcal{O}_{C}$, then we obtain the following commutative diagram:

where $F^{\prime}:=\mathcal{O}_{p_{1}+p_{2}} \oplus \mathcal{O}_{p_{2}+p_{0}} \oplus \mathcal{O}_{p_{0}+p_{1}}$ and $F^{\prime \prime}:=\mathcal{O}_{p_{0}}\left(p_{0}\right) \oplus \mathcal{O}_{p_{1}}\left(p_{1}\right) \oplus \mathcal{O}_{p_{2}}\left(p_{2}\right)$.
Hence we have the following elementary transformation of Maruyama:

where $\pi^{\prime}: W^{\prime}:=\mathbf{P}\left(E^{\prime}\right) \rightarrow C$ is the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle associated to $E^{\prime}, \phi$ is the blowing-up at $\mathbf{P}\left(\mathcal{O}_{p_{0}}\left(p_{0}\right) \oplus \mathcal{O}_{p_{1}}\left(p_{1}\right) \oplus \mathcal{O}_{p_{2}}\left(p_{2}\right)\right)=\mathbf{P}\left(\mathcal{O}_{p_{0}}\left(p_{0}\right)\right) \cup \mathbf{P}\left(\mathcal{O}_{p_{1}}\left(p_{1}\right)\right) \cup \mathbf{P}\left(\mathcal{O}_{p_{2}}\left(p_{2}\right)\right)=\left\{q_{0}, q_{1}, q_{2}\right\}$ and $\phi^{\prime}$ is the blowing-up along $\mathbf{P}\left(\mathcal{O}_{p_{1}+p_{2}} \oplus \mathcal{O}_{p_{2}+p_{0}} \oplus \mathcal{O}_{p_{0}+p_{1}}\right)=\mathbf{P}\left(\mathcal{O}_{p_{1}+p_{2}}\right) \cup \mathbf{P}\left(\mathcal{O}_{p_{2}+p_{0}}\right) \cup$ $\mathbf{P}\left(\mathcal{O}_{p_{0}+p_{1}}\right)$. Denote $\mathcal{E}_{i}:=\phi^{-1}\left(q_{i}\right)$ and $F_{i}^{\prime}:=\phi^{\prime}\left(\mathcal{E}_{i}\right)(i=0,1,2)$. If $\bar{S} \subset \bar{W}$ is the proper transform of $S$ by $\phi$, then $\phi^{*} S=\bar{S}+\mathcal{E}_{0}$ holds. Let $\bar{T}$ be the proper transform of $T$ by $\phi$
and $T^{\prime} \subset W^{\prime}$ the tautological divisor with $\pi_{*}^{\prime} \mathcal{O}_{W^{\prime}}\left(T^{\prime}\right) \cong E^{\prime}$. We have $T^{\prime} \sim \phi(\bar{T})$. Since $\phi^{*} T=\bar{T}+\mathcal{E}_{0}+\mathcal{E}_{1}+\mathcal{E}_{2}$, we have

$$
S^{\prime}:=\phi^{\prime}(\bar{S}) \sim 4 T^{\prime}+4\left(F_{0}^{\prime}+F_{1}^{\prime}+F_{2}^{\prime}\right)-\pi^{\prime *} D-F_{0} \sim 4 T^{\prime}+2 F_{0}^{\prime}+3 F_{1}^{\prime}+3 F_{2}^{\prime} .
$$

On the other hand, $W^{\prime} \cong C \times \mathbf{P}^{2}$ holds, and $\Phi_{\left|T^{\prime}\right|}$ coincides with the second projection $W^{\prime} \rightarrow \mathbf{P}^{2}$. Since $\Phi_{|T|}$ factors as a rational mapping into a composite $\Phi_{|T|}: W \cdots \rightarrow$ $W^{\prime} \rightarrow \mathbf{P}^{2}$, we have

$$
\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}=\operatorname{deg}\left(\left.\Phi_{\left|T^{\prime}\right|}\right|_{S^{\prime}}\right)=\left(T^{\prime}\right)^{2}\left(4 T^{\prime}+2 F_{0}^{\prime}+3 F_{1}^{\prime}+3 F_{2}^{\prime}\right)=8
$$

We obtain the result in the case (3) in the same way as above.
The proof is essentially the same when $L_{0} \not \approx L_{1} \cong L_{2}, L_{1} \not \approx L_{2} \cong L_{0}$, or $L_{2} \not \approx L_{0} \cong$ $L_{1}$.

> q.e.d.

## 4.2 $E$ is the direct sum of an invertible sheaf and an indecomposable locally free sheaf of rank 2

We denote $E=E_{0} \oplus L$, where $E_{0}$ is an indecomposable locally free sheaf of rank 2 with $\operatorname{deg} E_{0}=: e$, and $L$ is an invertible sheaf over an elliptic curve $C$ with $\operatorname{deg} L=: d$.

We prove the existence of a surface $S$ with $K_{S}^{2}=3 p_{g}(S), q(S)=1$ and $p_{g}(S)=N$ for any integer $N \geq 2$ in $\S 4.2 .1$ (Theorem 4.10) when $e$ is even, and in §4.2.2 (Theorem 4.11) when $e$ is odd. (When $e$ is even, however, the case $p_{g}(S)=2$ does not occur.) In $\S 4.2 .3$, we study the canonical mapping of the surfaces obtained in $\S 4.2 .1$ and $\S 4.2 .2$. The results about the canonical mappings are stated in Corollary 4.15, and Propositions 4.16, 4.20, 4.22 and 4.41.

We only have to consider the case $e \geq 0, d \geq 0$ and $(e, d) \neq(0,0)$ by the remark immedietely before §4.1.

Let $\pi: W:=\mathbf{P}^{2}(E) \rightarrow C$ be the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle associated to $E$, and $T \in \operatorname{Div}(W)$ a tautological divisor with $\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \cong E$. We have a section $C_{1}:=\mathbf{P}\left(E / E_{0}\right) \subset W$ of $\pi$. If $\rho: X \rightarrow W$ is the blowing-up along $C_{1}$, then $X$ is a $\mathbf{P}^{1}$-bundle $\sigma: X \rightarrow Y:=\mathbf{P}\left(E_{0}\right)$. Let $\mu: Y \rightarrow C$ be the ruling, and denote $Y_{1}:=\rho^{*} T$ and $Y_{\infty}:=\rho^{-1}\left(C_{1}\right)$. If $C_{0} \in \operatorname{Div}(Y)$ is a tautological divisor with $\mu_{*} \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \cong E_{0}$, then we have $Y_{1} \sim Y_{\infty}+\sigma^{*} C_{0}$, and $\sigma_{*} \mathcal{O}_{X}\left(Y_{1}\right) \cong \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \oplus \mu^{*} L$. Let $Y_{0} \in \operatorname{Div}(X)$ be a divisor with $\mathcal{O}_{X}\left(Y_{0}\right) \cong \mathcal{O}_{X}\left(Y_{1}\right) \otimes$ $\sigma^{*} \mu^{*} L^{-1}$, and let $Z_{0} \in H^{0}\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{X}\left(Y_{0}\right)\right), Z_{\infty} \in H^{0}\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{X}\left(Y_{\infty}\right)\right)$ be global sections with $\left(Z_{0}\right)=Y_{0}$ and $\left(Z_{\infty}\right)=Y_{\infty}$. Then $Z_{0}$ and $Z_{\infty}$ give homogeneous coordinates of each fiber of the $\mathbf{P}^{1}$-bundle $\sigma$.

We study the complete linear system of the invertible sheaf $\mathcal{O}_{X}\left(4 Y_{1}\right) \otimes \sigma^{*} \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee} \cong$ $\rho^{*}\left(\mathcal{O}_{W}(4 T) \otimes \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$ over $X$. Since we have

$$
H^{0}\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{X}\left(4 Y_{1}\right) \otimes \sigma^{*} \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \cong H^{0}\left(Y, S^{4}\left(\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \oplus \mu^{*} L\right) \otimes \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right) \\
& \cong \bigoplus_{j=0}^{4} H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(j C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes(4-j)} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)\right) \\
& \cong \bigoplus_{j=0}^{4} H^{0}\left(C, S^{j}\left(E_{0}\right) \otimes L^{\otimes(4-j)} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right),
\end{aligned}
$$

any $\Psi \in H^{0}\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{X}\left(4 Y_{1}\right) \otimes \sigma^{*} \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$ can be written as

$$
\Psi=\sum_{j=0}^{4} \psi_{j} Z_{0}^{4-j} Z_{\infty}^{j}, \quad \psi_{j} \in H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(j C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes(4-j)} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)\right),(j=0, \cdots, 4)
$$

### 4.2.1 Existence in the case where $e$ is even

Denote $e=2 e_{0}$. There exist invertible sheaves $L_{0} \in \mathcal{E}_{C}\left(1, e_{0}\right)$, and $L_{1} \in \mathcal{E}_{C}\left(1, d-e_{0}\right)$, with $E_{0} \cong L_{0} \otimes F_{2}$ and $L \cong L_{0} \otimes L_{1}$, hence we have $E \cong L_{0} \otimes\left(F_{2} \oplus L_{1}\right)$.

Theorem 4.10 Let the conditions and notation be as above. Then the complete linear system $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ over $W$ satisfies the condition (A) if and only if one of the following (1), (2) and (3) holds:
(1) $e=d>0$ and $L_{0} \cong L_{1}$,
(2) $d<e<4 d$,
(3) $e=4 d>0$ and $L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 2} \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}$.

By the remark after Proposition 3.3, the case $e<0$ and the case $d<0$ may be excluded. Furthermore, the case $E_{0} \cong F_{2}$ and the case $L \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}$ may also be excluded.

If $e=d=0$ and $E_{0} \not \not F_{2}, L \not \approx \mathcal{O}_{C}$ hold, then $H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T)\right) \cong H^{0}(C, E)=0$. Since $\omega_{S^{\prime}} \cong \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{W}} \mathcal{O}_{S^{\prime}}$ for $S^{\prime} \in\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ by the adjunction formula, the minimal resolution of $S^{\prime}$ cannot be of general type, and this case may be excluded, too.

Therefore, we have $e>0$ and $d>0$.
Since we have $S^{j}\left(F_{2}\right) \cong F_{j+1}($ cf. Theorem 3.4), we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& S^{j}\left(E_{0}\right) \otimes L^{\otimes(4-j)} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee} \\
& \quad \cong S^{j}\left(F_{2}\right) \otimes L_{0}^{\otimes j} \otimes L_{0}^{\otimes(4-j)} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes(4-j)} \otimes\left(L_{0}^{-1}\right)^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \\
& \cong F_{j+1} \otimes L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes(3-j)}, \quad(j=0, \cdots, 4) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Furthermore, since $\operatorname{det} F_{2} \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}$ holds, we have $\operatorname{det} E \cong L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}$. Hence

$$
H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(j C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes(4-j)} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)\right) \cong H^{0}\left(C, F_{j+1} \otimes L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes(3-j)}\right) .
$$

From now on, we deal with different cases.
(i) The case where ( $e=d$ and $L_{0} \not \not L_{1}$ ), or ( $e<d$ ). Since we have

$$
H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right) \cong H^{0}\left(C, F_{5} \otimes L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}\right)=0,
$$

the coefficient $\psi_{4}$ of $Z_{\infty}^{4}$ in $\Psi$ is always 0 , hence the divisor $(\Psi)$ has $Y_{0}$ as a component. Therefore, the image of $(\Psi)$ in $W$ by $\rho$ is not irreducible.
(ii) The case where $\left(e=d>0\right.$ and $\left.L_{0} \cong L_{1}\right)$, $(d<e<3 d)$, or ( $e=3 d$ and $\left.L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3} \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}\right)$. For general $\Psi \in H^{0}\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{X}\left(4 Y_{1}\right) \otimes \sigma^{*} \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$, we may assume $\psi_{j} \neq 0,(j=0, \cdots, 4)$, hence if the complete linear systems of the invertible sheaves $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}$ on $Y$ and $L^{\otimes 4} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}$ on $C$ do not have base points, then $\mid 4 Y_{1}-$ $\sigma^{*} \mu^{*} D \mid$ does not have base points either.

Let us look at $L^{\otimes 4} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}$. Since we have $\operatorname{deg}\left(L^{\otimes 4} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)=3 d-e \geq 0$, it does not have base points when $3 d-e \neq 1$.

If $3 d-e=1$ holds, then there exists a unique point $q \in C$ with $L^{\otimes 4} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee} \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}(q)$. If we denote $\Gamma:=Y_{\infty} \cap(\mu \circ \sigma)^{-1}(q)$, then $\Gamma$ is contained in the base locus of $\left|4 Y_{1}-\sigma^{*} \mu^{*} D\right|$ on $X$. We claim that $\Gamma$ is a $(-1)$-curve on $S^{\prime \prime}:=(\Psi)$. Indeed, it is clear that $\Gamma$ is a nonsingular rational curve. Hence it is sufficient to show that the self-intersection number of $\Gamma$ in $S^{\prime \prime}$ is equal to -1 . Let $D^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Div}(C)$ be a divisor on $C$ with $L \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}\left(D^{\prime}\right)$. Then we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(\left.Y_{\infty}\right|_{S^{\prime \prime}}\right)^{2} & =Y_{\infty}^{2}\left(4 Y_{1}-\sigma^{*} \mu^{*} D\right)=Y_{\infty}^{2}\left(4 Y_{0}+\sigma^{*} \mu^{*}\left(4 D^{\prime}-D\right)\right) \\
& =Y_{\infty}^{2} \sigma^{*} \mu^{*}\left(4 D^{\prime}-D\right) \\
& =Y_{\infty}\left(Y_{0}+\sigma^{*}\left(\mu^{*} D^{\prime}-C_{0}\right)\right) \sigma^{*} \mu^{*}\left(4 D^{\prime}-D\right) \\
& =Y_{\infty} \sigma^{*}\left(\left(\mu^{*} D^{\prime}-C_{0}\right)\left(\mu^{*}\left(4 D^{\prime}-D\right)\right)\right. \\
& =C_{0} \mu^{*}\left(D-4 D^{\prime}\right)=e-3 d=-1 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore, the image of $\Gamma$ in $W$ is a nonsingular point of $S^{\prime}=\rho\left(S^{\prime \prime}\right)$.
Let us look at $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}$. Since we have

$$
H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} L_{0}^{-1}\right) \cong H^{0}\left(C, E_{0} \otimes L_{0}^{-1}\right) \cong H^{0}\left(C, F_{2}\right) \cong \mathbf{C},
$$

there exists a section $C^{\prime}$ of $\mu$ with $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C^{\prime}\right) \cong \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} L_{0}^{-1}$ on $Y$. Hence we have

$$
H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right) \cong H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C^{\prime}\right) \otimes L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}\right)
$$

First we consider the case where $e-d \geq 2$. Since $\operatorname{deg}\left(L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}\right)=e-d$ holds, there does not exist a base point in $Y \backslash C^{\prime}$. We consider the cohomology long exact sequence induced by the exact sequence of sheaves

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 & \left.\rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(3 C^{\prime}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}\right)\right) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C^{\prime}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}\right) \\
& \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{C^{\prime}} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C^{\prime}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}\right) \rightarrow 0
\end{aligned}
$$

Since we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& H^{1}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(3 C^{\prime}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}\right)\right) \cong H^{1}\left(C, S^{3}\left(F_{2}\right) \otimes L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}\right) \\
& \quad \cong H^{1}\left(C, F_{4} \otimes L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}\right) \cong 0
\end{aligned}
$$

the restriction mapping

$$
H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C^{\prime}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}\right)\right) \rightarrow H^{0}\left(C^{\prime}, \mathcal{O}_{C^{\prime}} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C^{\prime}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}\right)\right)
$$

is surjective. On the other hand, since we have $\left(C^{\prime}\right)^{2}=0$, the degree of the restriction of $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C^{\prime}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}\right)$ to $C^{\prime}$ is $e-d \geq 2$, hence there does not exist a base point on $C^{\prime}$ either.

When $e-d=1$ holds, there exists a unique point $p \in C$ with $L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}(p)$. If we denote $\Gamma_{0}:=\mu^{-1}(p) \subset Y$, then $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee} \cong \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{0}\right)$. Hence, a general member of $\left|4 C_{0}-\mu^{*} D\right|$ is nonsingular by Lemma 3.5. Thus a general member of the complete linear system $\left|4 Y_{1}-\sigma^{*} \mu^{*} D\right|$ on $X$ is also irreducible and nonsingular.

If $e-d=0$ holds, since we have $L_{0} \cong L_{1}$ by assumption, $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee} \cong$ $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C^{\prime}\right)$ holds. Hence $H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right) \cong H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C^{\prime}\right)\right) \cong H^{0}\left(C, F_{5}\right) \cong$ C. Thus $C^{\prime \prime}:=\sigma^{-1}\left(C^{\prime}\right) \cap Y_{0}$ is the base locus of $\left|4 Y_{1}-\sigma^{*} \mu^{*} D\right|$. We look at the coefficient $\psi_{3} \in H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(3 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)\right)$ of $Z_{0} Z_{\infty}^{3}$ in $\Psi$. Since we have $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(3 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right) \cong \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(3 C^{\prime}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} L_{0}$, the divisor $\left(\psi_{3}\right)$ on $Y$ defined by general $\psi_{3}$ intersects $C^{\prime}$ at $\operatorname{deg} L_{0}=e_{0}$ points transversally. Let $p$ be one of these intersection points, $t, u$ local equations for $C^{\prime}$ and $\left(\psi_{3}\right)$ around $p$ respectively, and denote $z_{0}:=Z_{0} / Z_{\infty}$. Then $\left(t, u, z_{0}\right)$ gives a local coordinate system of $X$ around $p_{0}:=\sigma^{-1}(p) \cap Y_{0} . \Psi$ can be written as

$$
\Psi=\psi_{0} z_{0}^{4}+\psi_{1} z_{0}^{3}+\psi_{2} z_{0}^{2}+\psi_{3} z_{0}+\psi_{4}=z_{0}\left(\psi_{0} z_{0}^{3}+\psi_{1} z_{0}^{2}+\psi_{2} z_{0}+u\right)+t^{4}
$$

around $p_{0}$. This is an equation defining a rational double point of type $A_{3}$.
We have to consider the case $E \cong L \otimes\left(F_{2} \oplus \mathcal{O}_{C}\right)$ with $L \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(1,1)$. (In this case, we have $e=2$ and $d=1$, hence $3 d-e=1$ and $e-d=1$ above hold at the same time.) In this case, the coefficient $\psi_{i}$ of $Z_{0}^{4-i} Z_{\infty}^{i}$ in $\Psi \in H^{0}\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{C}\left(4 Y_{1}\right) \otimes \sigma^{*} \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$ is the element of $H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(i C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes(4-i)} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)\right) \cong H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C^{\prime}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} L\right)$. We have $\operatorname{Bs}\left|i C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{0}\right|=$ $\left\{y_{0}\right\}$ by Lemma 3.5, and hence $\operatorname{Bs}\left|4 Y_{1}-\sigma^{*} \mu^{*} D\right|=\sigma^{-1}\left(y_{0}\right) \cup\left\{(\mu \circ \sigma)^{-1}(p) \cap Y_{\infty}\right\}$. We have already seen that a general member of $\left|4 Y_{1}-\sigma^{*} \mu^{*} D\right|$ is nonsingular along $(\mu \circ \sigma)^{-1}(p) \cap Y_{\infty}$. We only have to prove that it is nonsingular along $\sigma^{-1}\left(y_{0}\right)$. Since all the nonsingular members of $\left|4 C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{0}\right|$ have the same tangent at $y_{0}$ by Lemma 3.5, we can choose a local coordinate $(t, u)$ around $y_{0}$ such that $t=0$ is the local equation of $\Gamma_{0}$ and that $u=0$ gives the tangent of nonsingular members of $\left|4 C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{0}\right|$ at $y_{0}$. If we denote $z:=Z_{0} / Z_{\infty}$, then $\Psi$ can be written as

$$
\begin{aligned}
\Psi= & a_{0} t z^{4}+\left(a_{1} t+b_{1} u+\iota_{1}(t, u)\right) z^{3}+\left(a_{2} t+b_{2} u+\iota_{2}(t, u)\right) z^{2} \\
& +\left(a_{3} t+b_{3} u+\iota_{3}(t, u)\right) z+\left(b_{4} u+\iota_{4}(t, u)\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

near $\sigma^{-1}\left(y_{0}\right) \backslash Y_{\infty}$, where $a_{i}, b_{j} \in \mathbf{C},(i=0,1,2,3, j=1,2,3,4)$, and $\iota_{j}(t, u),(j=$ $1,2,3,4)$ is the sum of all the monomials with respect to $t$ and $u$ with degree at least two. Since $\Psi$ is general, we may assume $a_{0} \neq 0$ and $b_{4} \neq 0$. Since the tangent of a
nonsingular member of $\left|i C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{0}\right|$ and the tangent of a nonsingular member of $\left|j C^{\prime}+\Gamma_{0}\right|$ are distinct when $i \neq j$ by Lemma 3.5 , we have $a_{1} a_{2} a_{3} b_{1} b_{2} b_{3} \neq 0$. We have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial t}=z\left\{a_{0} z^{3}+\left(a_{1}+\frac{\partial \iota_{1}}{\partial t}\right) z^{2}+\left(a_{2}+\frac{\partial \iota_{2}}{\partial t}\right) z+\left(a_{3}+\frac{\partial \iota_{3}}{\partial t}\right)+\frac{\partial \iota_{4}}{\partial t}\right\}, \\
& \frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial u}=\left(b_{1}+\frac{\partial \iota_{1}}{\partial u}\right) z^{3}+\left(b_{2}+\frac{\partial \iota_{2}}{\partial u}\right) z^{2}+\left(b_{3}+\frac{\partial \iota_{3}}{\partial u}\right) z+b_{4}+\frac{\partial \iota_{4}}{\partial u},
\end{aligned}
$$

and if we fix $a_{1}, a_{2}$ and $a_{3}$, then $b_{1}, b_{2}$ and $b_{3}$ are uniquely determined. On the other hand, $a_{0}$ and $b_{4}$ can be chosen independently of them, and hence the two equations $\partial \Psi / \partial t=0$ and $\partial \Psi / \partial u=0$ do not have the same solutions, since $\Psi$ is general. Therefore, the divisor $(\Psi)$ is nonsingular along $\sigma^{-1}\left(y_{0}\right)$.

Finally, we investigate the image of $Y_{\infty} \cap S^{\prime \prime}$ in $W$ where $S^{\prime \prime}:=(\Psi)$. If we substitute $Z_{\infty}=0$ into $\Psi=0$, then we get $\psi_{0} Z_{0}^{4}=0$. Since we have $Z_{0} \neq 0$ on $Y_{\infty}, \psi_{0}=0$ must hold. From $\psi_{0} \in H^{0}\left(Y, \mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes 4} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)\right)$, and $\operatorname{deg}\left(L^{\otimes 4} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)=3 d-e$, we see that $S^{\prime \prime}$ intersects $Y_{\infty} \cong Y \xrightarrow{\rho} C$ at $3 d-e$ fibers. We can obtain $Y_{\infty}^{2} S^{\prime \prime}=e-3 d$ by the same caluculation as above. Therefore these are all ( -1 )-curves. Hence the image of $Y_{\infty} \cap S^{\prime \prime}$ in $W$ is a finite set of nonsingular points of $S^{\prime}:=\rho\left(S^{\prime \prime}\right)$.
(iii) The case where ( $3 d=e>0$ and $L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3} \neq \mathcal{O}_{C}$ ), $(3 d<e<4 d$ ), or ( $e=4 d>0$ and $\left.L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 2} \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}\right)$. Since we have $H^{0}\left(Y, \mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes 4} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)\right)=H^{0}\left(C, L_{0} \otimes L 1^{\otimes 3}\right)=0$, the coefficient $\psi_{0}$ of $Z_{0}^{4}$ in $\Psi$ is always 0 . Hence $S^{\prime \prime}:=(\Psi)$ has $Z_{\infty}$ as a component, i.e., the image of $S^{\prime \prime}$ in $W$ by $\rho$ contains $C_{1}$. In this case, we have to consider the complete linear system of $\mathcal{O}_{X}\left(4 Y_{1}\right) \otimes \sigma^{*} \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{X}\left(-Y_{\infty}\right) \cong \mathcal{O}_{X}\left(3 Y_{1}\right) \otimes \sigma^{*}\left(\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$. Any $\tilde{\Psi}:=\Psi / Z_{\infty} \in H^{0}\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{X}\left(3 Y_{1}\right) \otimes \sigma^{*}\left(\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)\right)$ can be written as

$$
\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\Psi}= & \sum_{j=0}^{3} \psi_{j+1} Z_{0}^{3-j} Z_{\infty}^{j}, \\
& \psi_{j+1} \in H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left((j+1) C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes(3-j)} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)\right),(j=0, \cdots, 3) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Since we have $\operatorname{deg}\left(L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 2}\right)=2 d-e_{0}=(1 / 2)(4 d-e) \geq 0$, and $\operatorname{deg}\left(L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}\right)=e-d \geq 0$, we see that $\psi_{0} \neq 0$ and $\psi_{3} \neq 0$ hold for general $\tilde{\Psi}$ by assumption. Therefore it is sufficient to investigate the base points of the complete linear systems of $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes 3} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$ and $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(\operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$ on $Y$ to investigate the base points of $\mathcal{O}_{X}\left(3 Y_{1}\right) \otimes \sigma^{*}\left(\mathcal{O} Y\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes\right.$ $\left.\mu^{*}\left(\operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)\right)$.

Let us look at $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes 3} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$. Since we have $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes 3} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right) \cong$ $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C^{\prime}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 2}\right)$ and $\operatorname{deg}\left(L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 2}\right)=(1 / 2)(4 d-e)$, we obtain the following results about the base points. If $4 d-e \geq 4$ holds, then base points do not exist. If $4 d-e=2$ holds, then there exists a unique isolated base point on $C^{\prime}$. If $4 d-e=0$ holds, then we have $\left|C^{\prime}\right|=\left\{C^{\prime}\right\}$. In each case, we can easily see that a general $\tilde{\Psi}$ is nonsingular over the base points of the complete linear system of $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes 3} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$ by looking at the above equation for $\tilde{\Psi}$.

Let us look at $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(\operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$. Since $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(\operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right) \cong \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C^{\prime}\right) \otimes$ $\mu^{*}\left(L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}\right)$ and $\operatorname{deg}\left(L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}\right)=e-d \geq 2$ hold, the complete linear system of $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(\operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$ is base point free.

By what we have seen so far, a general member of the complete linear system of $\mathcal{O}_{X}\left(3 Y_{1}\right) \otimes \sigma^{*}\left(\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$ is irreducible and nonsingular.

Let $S^{\prime \prime}$ be a general member of the complete linear system of $\mathcal{O}_{X}\left(3 Y_{1}\right) \otimes \sigma^{*}\left(\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes\right.$ $\left.\mu^{*}\left(\operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)\right)$. We may assume that $S^{\prime \prime}$ is irreducible and nonsingular. We study the multiplicity of each point of the image of $S^{\prime \prime} \cap Y_{\infty}$ on $S^{\prime}:=\rho\left(S^{\prime \prime}\right)$ by $\rho$. If $\tilde{\Psi} \in H^{0}\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{X}\left(3 Y_{1}\right) \otimes \sigma^{*}\left(\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(\operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)\right)\right.$ is a global section defining $S^{\prime \prime}$, and if we substitute $Z_{\infty}=0$ into $\tilde{\Psi}=0$, then we obtain $\psi_{1} Z_{0}^{3}=0$. Since $Z_{0} \neq 0$ holds on $Y_{\infty}$, we have $\psi_{1}=0$. Since $\psi_{1}$ is an element of $H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes 3} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)\right)$, we investigate the complete linear system of $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes 3} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$. A general member is irreducible and nonsingular when $4 d-e \geq 4$ or $4 d-e=0$ as we saw above. If $4 d-e=2$ holds, since $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes 3} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right) \cong \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C^{\prime}\right) \cong \mu^{*}\left(L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 2}\right)$ and $\operatorname{deg}\left(L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 2}\right)=1$ hold, we have $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes 3} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right) \cong \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C^{\prime}+\Gamma\right)$, where $\Gamma$ is the fiber of $\mu$ such that $\mathcal{O}_{C}(p) \cong L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 2}$ for $p:=\mu(\Gamma)$. If we denote $\Gamma^{\prime}:=\mu^{-1}\left(p^{\prime}\right)$ for any $p^{\prime} \in C$, then we have

$$
H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C^{\prime}+\Gamma-\Gamma^{\prime}\right)\right) \cong H^{0}\left(C, F_{2} \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}\left(p-p^{\prime}\right)\right)=0
$$

so no member has any fiber as a component except $\Gamma$. On the other hand, we have

$$
\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C^{\prime}+\Gamma\right)\right)=\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(C, F_{2} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}(p)\right)=2
$$

so a general member of the complete linear system of $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes 3} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$ is irreducible and nonsingular by what we saw above. Hence $S^{\prime \prime} \cap Y_{\infty}$ is an irreducible section of $Y_{\infty} \cong Y \xrightarrow{\mu} C$, and does not contain any fiber, so each point of its image by $\rho$ is nonsingular on $S^{\prime}$.
(iv) The case where $\left(e=4 d\right.$ and $\left.L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 2} \not \approx \mathcal{O}_{C}\right)$ or $(4 d<e)$. Since we have $H^{0}\left(Y, \mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes 4} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)\right) \cong H^{0}\left(C, L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3}\right)=0$ and $H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes 3} \otimes\right.\right.$ $\left.\left.\operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)\right) \cong H^{0}\left(C, F_{2} \otimes L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 2}\right)=0$, the coefficients $\psi_{0}$ of $Z_{0}^{4}$ and $\psi_{1}$ of $Z_{0}^{3} Z_{1}$ are always 0 . Hence $(\Psi)$ has $2 Y_{\infty}$ as a component. This means that the image of $(\Psi)$ in $W$ contains $C_{1}$ as a singular curve. Therefore the complete linear system $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ on $W$ does not have irreducible members with at most rational double points as singularities.

### 4.2.2 Existence in the case where $e$ is odd

Denote $e=: 2 e_{0}+1$. If we fix any $F_{2,1} \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(2,1)$, there exist $L_{0} \in \mathcal{E}_{C}\left(1, e_{0}\right)$ and $L_{1} \in \mathcal{E}_{C}\left(1, d-e_{0}\right)$ with $E_{0} \cong L_{0} \otimes F_{2,1}$ and $L \cong L_{0} \otimes L_{1}$. Hence $E \cong L_{0} \otimes\left(F_{2,1} \oplus L_{1}\right)$ holds. Let $\mathcal{L}_{k}(k=1,2,3)$ be the nontrivial line bundles on the elliptic curve $C$ satisfying $\mathcal{L}_{k}^{\otimes 2} \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}$.

Theorem 4.11 Let the conditions and notation be as above. Then the complete linear system $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ on $W$ satisfies the condition (A) if and only if one of the following (1) and (2) holds:
(1) $e=d>0$ and $\operatorname{det} F_{2,1} \otimes L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}$ is isomorphic to one of $\mathcal{O}_{C}$ and $\mathcal{L}_{k}(k=1,2,3)$.
(2) $d<e<4 d$.

We use the following result by Ashikaga [1] to prove this theorem. Since [1] is unpublished, we give the proof for the readers' convenience.

Lemma 4.12 If $\mathcal{L}_{k}(k=1,2,3)$ are the three nontrivial line bundles satisfying $\mathcal{L}_{k}^{\otimes 2} \cong$ $\mathcal{O}_{C}$, and if $F_{2,1}$ is an indecomposable locally free sheaf of rank 2 and degree 1 on an elliptic curve $C$, then the following hold for any nonnegative integer $m$ :

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (1) } S^{4 m}\left(F_{2,1}\right) \cong\left(\mathcal{O}_{C}^{\oplus(m+1)} \oplus\left(\bigoplus_{k=1}^{3} \mathcal{L}_{k}\right)^{\oplus m}\right) \otimes\left(\operatorname{det} F_{2,1}\right)^{\otimes 2 m} \\
& \text { (2) } \quad S^{4 m+2}\left(F_{2,1}\right) \cong\left(\mathcal{O}_{C}^{\oplus m} \oplus\left(\bigoplus_{k=1}^{3} \mathcal{L}_{k}\right)^{\oplus(m+1)}\right) \otimes\left(\operatorname{det} F_{2,1}\right)^{\otimes(2 m+1)}
\end{aligned}
$$

Proof First, we show the statement for $S^{2} F_{2,1}$. We have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& F_{2,1} \otimes F_{2,1} \cong S^{2} F_{2,1} \oplus \operatorname{det} F_{2,1} \\
& F_{2,1} \otimes F_{2,1} \cong\left(\mathcal{O}_{C} \oplus \mathcal{L}_{1} \oplus \mathcal{L}_{2} \oplus \mathcal{L}_{3}\right) \otimes M
\end{aligned}
$$

for some $M \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(1,1)$ by the Clebsch-Gordan formula [4, p.438], and Atiyah's result [4, Theorem 14]. Hence $\operatorname{det} F_{2,1}$ is isomorphic to one of $M$ and $M \otimes \mathcal{L}_{k}(k=1,2,3)$ by the Krull-Schmidt theorem. If $\operatorname{det} F_{2,1} \cong M$ holds, then there is nothing to prove. If $\operatorname{det} F_{2,1} \cong \mathcal{L}_{1} \otimes M$ holds, then since we have $\mathcal{L}_{1}^{-1} \cong \mathcal{L}_{1}$, we obtain $\operatorname{det} F_{2,1} \cong \mathcal{L}_{1} \otimes M$. Hence we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& S^{2} F_{2,1} \cong\left(\mathcal{O}_{C} \oplus \mathcal{L}_{2} \oplus \mathcal{L}_{3}\right) \otimes \mathcal{L}_{1} \otimes \operatorname{det} F_{2,1} \cong\left(\mathcal{L}_{1} \oplus \mathcal{L}_{3} \oplus \mathcal{L}_{2}\right) \otimes \operatorname{det} F_{2,1} \\
& \quad \cong\left(\mathcal{L}_{1} \oplus \mathcal{L}_{2} \oplus \mathcal{L}_{3}\right) \otimes \operatorname{det} F_{2,1}
\end{aligned}
$$

If we assume $\operatorname{det} F_{2,1} \cong \mathcal{L}_{k} \otimes M(k=2,3)$, then we obtain the same result.
To complete the proof, it is sufficient to show the following (i), (ii) and (iii):
(i) $S^{4} F_{2,1} \cong\left(\mathcal{O}_{C}^{\oplus 2} \oplus \mathcal{L}_{1} \oplus \mathcal{L}_{2} \oplus \mathcal{L}_{3}\right) \otimes\left(\operatorname{det} F_{2,1}\right)^{\otimes 2}$.
(ii) (1) of the lemma is true under the assumption that the lemma is true for all the even integers less than or equal to $4 m-2$.
(iii) (2) of the lemma is true under the assumption that the lemma is true for all the even integers less than or equal to $4 m$.

We show only (ii) here. (i) and (iii) can be shown in the same way.

We have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& S^{4 m} F_{2,1} \otimes S^{2} F_{2,1} \cong S^{4 m+2} F_{2,1} \oplus\left(\operatorname{det} F_{2,1}\right) \otimes S^{4 m+1} F_{2,1} \otimes F_{2,1} \\
& \quad \cong S^{4 m+2} F_{2,1} \oplus\left(\operatorname{det} F_{2,1}\right) \otimes\left(\left(S^{4 m} F_{2,1} \oplus\left(\operatorname{det} F_{2,1}\right) \otimes S^{4 m-2} F_{2,1}\right)\right. \\
& \quad \cong S^{4 m+2} F_{2,1} \oplus\left(\left(\operatorname{det} F_{2,1}\right) \otimes S^{4 m} F_{2,1}\right) \oplus\left(\left(\operatorname{det} F_{2,1}\right)^{\otimes 2} \otimes S^{4 m-2} F_{2,1}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

for $m>0$ by the Clebsch-Gordan formula. On the other hand, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
S^{4 m} & F_{2,1} \otimes S^{2} F_{2,1} \\
& \cong\left(\mathcal{O}_{C}^{\oplus(m+1)} \oplus\left(\mathcal{L}_{1} \oplus \mathcal{L}_{2} \oplus \mathcal{L}_{3}\right)^{\oplus m}\right) \otimes\left(\operatorname{det} F_{2,1}\right)^{\otimes 2 m} \\
& \otimes\left(\mathcal{L}_{1} \oplus \mathcal{L}_{2} \oplus \mathcal{L}_{3}\right) \otimes\left(\operatorname{det} F_{2,1}\right) \\
& \cong\left(\mathcal{O}_{C}^{\oplus 3 m} \oplus\left(\mathcal{L}_{1} \oplus \mathcal{L}_{2} \oplus \mathcal{L}_{3}\right)^{\oplus(3 m+1)}\right) \otimes\left(\operatorname{det} F_{2,1}\right)^{\otimes(2 m+1)}
\end{aligned}
$$

by the induction assumption, and furthermore, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left(\left(\operatorname{det} F_{2,1}\right) \otimes S^{4 m} F_{2,1}\right) \oplus\left(\left(\operatorname{det} F_{2,1}\right)^{\otimes 2} \otimes S^{4 m-2} F_{2,1}\right) \\
& \quad \cong\left(\mathcal{O}_{C}^{\oplus(m+1)} \oplus\left(\mathcal{L}_{1} \oplus \mathcal{L}_{2} \oplus \mathcal{L}_{3}\right)^{\oplus m}\right) \otimes\left(\operatorname{det} F_{2,1}\right)^{\otimes(2 m+1)} \\
& \quad \oplus\left(\mathcal{O}_{C}^{\oplus(m-1)} \oplus\left(\mathcal{L}_{1} \oplus \mathcal{L}_{2} \oplus \mathcal{L}_{3}\right)^{\oplus m}\right) \otimes\left(\operatorname{det} F_{2,1}\right)^{\otimes(2 m+1)} \\
& \quad \cong\left(\mathcal{O}_{C}^{\oplus 2 m} \oplus\left(\mathcal{L}_{1} \oplus \mathcal{L}_{2} \oplus \mathcal{L}_{3}\right)^{\oplus 2 m}\right) \otimes\left(\operatorname{det} F_{2,1}\right)^{\otimes(2 m+1)} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence we have

$$
S^{4 m+2} F_{2,1} \cong\left(\mathcal{O}_{C}^{\oplus m} \oplus\left(\mathcal{L}_{1} \oplus \mathcal{L}_{2} \oplus \mathcal{L}_{3}\right)^{\oplus(m+1)}\right) \otimes\left(\operatorname{det} F_{2,1}\right)^{\otimes(2 m+1)}
$$

by the Krull-Schmidt theorem.
q.e.d.

Let us now prove Theorem 4.11.
By the remark after Proposition 3.3, the case $e<0$, the case $d<0$ and the case $L \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}$ may be excluded.
(i) The case where $(e<d)$, or ( $e=d$ and $\operatorname{det} F_{2,1} \otimes L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}$ is isomorphic to none of $\mathcal{O}_{C}$ and $\mathcal{L}_{k}(k=1,2,3)$ ). We obtain the following isomorphism from Lemma 4.12.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right) \\
& \cong H^{0}\left(C, S^{4}\left(E_{0}\right) \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right) \\
& \quad \cong H^{0}\left(C, S^{4}\left(F_{2,1}\right) \otimes L_{0}^{\otimes 4} \otimes\left(L_{0}^{-1}\right)^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \otimes \operatorname{det} F_{2,1}^{\vee}\right) \\
& \quad \cong H^{0}\left(C, S^{4}\left(F_{2,1}\right) \otimes \operatorname{det} F_{2,1}^{\vee} \otimes L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}\right) \\
& \quad \cong H^{0}\left(C,\left(\operatorname{det} F_{2,1}\right) \otimes L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}\right)^{\oplus 2} \oplus\left(\bigoplus_{k=1}^{3} H^{0}\left(C,\left(\operatorname{det} F_{2,1}\right) \otimes L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \otimes \mathcal{L}_{k}\right)\right) \\
& \quad \cong 0
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore, the coefficient $\psi_{4}$ for $Z_{\infty}^{4}$ of $\Psi$ is always 0 , and $(\Psi)$ has $Y_{0}$ as a component. This means that the image of $(\Psi)$ in $W$ by $\rho$ is not irreducible.
(ii) The case where $\left(e=d>0\right.$ and $\operatorname{det} F_{2,1} \otimes L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}$ is isomorphic to one of $\mathcal{O}_{C}$ and $\left.\mathcal{L}_{k}(k=1,2,3)\right),(d<e<3 d)$, or $\left(e=3 d>0\right.$ and $\left.L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3} \cong \operatorname{det} F_{2,1}\right)$.

For general $\Psi \in H^{0}\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{X}\left(4 Y_{1}\right) \otimes \sigma^{*} \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$, we have $\psi_{j} \neq 0(j=0, \cdots, 4)$ as in the case of $e$ even. Hence base points of the complete linear system of $\mathcal{O}_{X}\left(4 Y_{1}\right) \otimes$ $\sigma^{*} \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}$ exist only over the base points of the complete linear systems of $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes$ $\operatorname{det} E^{\vee}$ and $\mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes 4} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$ on $Y$. We investigate the existence of these base points.

Let us look at $L^{\otimes 4} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}$. Since we have $\operatorname{deg}\left(L^{\otimes 4} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)=\operatorname{deg}\left(L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3} \otimes\right.$ $\left.\operatorname{det} F_{2,1}\right)=3 d-e \geq 0$, and $L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3} \otimes \operatorname{det} F_{2,1} \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}$ when $3 d-e=0$ holds, there do not exist base points if $3 d-e \neq 1$. If $3 d-e=1$ holds, then there exists a point $q \in C$ with $L^{\otimes 4} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee} \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}(q)$. If we denote $\Gamma:=Y_{\infty} \cap \sigma^{-1} \mu^{-1}(q)$, we have $\Gamma \cong \mathbf{P}^{1}$, and this is contained in the base locus of $\left|4 Y_{1}-\sigma^{*} \mu^{*} D\right|$. We can show that $\Gamma$ is a $(-1)$-curve of $S^{\prime \prime}:=(\Psi)$ and $\rho(\Gamma)$ is a nonsingular point of $S^{\prime}:=\rho\left(S^{\prime \prime}\right)$ as before.

Let us now look at $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}$. We fix any point $q \in C$ and denote $\Gamma:=\mu^{-1}(q)$. If the restriction mapping

$$
H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right) \rightarrow H^{0}\left(\Gamma, \mathcal{O}_{\Gamma}\left(4 C_{0}\right)\right) \cong H^{0}\left(\mathbf{P}^{1}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{1}}(4)\right)
$$

is surjective, then there do not exist base points on $\Gamma$, and since $q$ is an arbitrary point of $C$, the base locus $\mathrm{Bs}\left|4 C_{0}-\mu^{*} D\right|$ is empty.

Since we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& H^{1}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(\mathcal{O}_{C}(-q) \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)\right. \\
& \quad \cong H^{1}\left(C, \operatorname{det} F_{2,1} \otimes L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}(-q)\right)^{\oplus 2} \\
& \quad \oplus\left(\bigoplus_{k=1}^{3} H^{1}\left(C, \operatorname{det} F_{2,1} \otimes L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}(-q) \otimes \mathcal{L}_{k}\right)\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

this cohomology group is 0 if $\operatorname{deg}\left(\operatorname{det} F_{2,1} \otimes L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}(-q)\right)=e-d-1 \geq 1$, i.e., $e-d \geq 2$, and hence the above restriction mapping is surjective.

We consider the case where $e-d=0,1$. For that purpose, we need to study the structure of $Y$ more precisely. Let us look at the complete linear system of $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes$ $\mu^{*}\left(\operatorname{det} E_{0}^{\vee}\right)^{\otimes 2}$. Since

$$
\begin{aligned}
& H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(\operatorname{det} E_{0}^{\vee}\right)^{\otimes 2}\right) \cong H^{0}\left(C, S^{4} E_{0} \otimes\left(\operatorname{det} E_{0}^{\vee}\right)^{\otimes 2}\right) \\
& \quad \cong H^{0}\left(C, \mathcal{O}_{C}\right)^{\oplus 2} \oplus\left(\bigoplus_{k=1}^{3} H^{0}\left(C, \mathcal{L}_{k}\right)\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

we have $\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(\operatorname{det} E_{0}^{\vee}\right)^{\otimes 2}\right)=2$. If we let $D_{0} \in \operatorname{Div}(C)$ be a divisor with $\mathcal{O}_{C}\left(D_{0}\right) \cong \operatorname{det} E_{0}$, then

$$
\left(4 C_{0}-2 \mu^{*} D_{0}\right)^{2}=16 C_{0}^{2}-16 C_{0} \mu^{*} D_{0}=16 e-16 e=0
$$

holds. Hence this complete linear system is a linear pencil which has no base point. Let $\zeta: Y \rightarrow \mathbf{P}^{1}$ be the corresponding fibration. The invertible sheaves $\mathcal{M}_{k}:=\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(2 C_{0}\right) \otimes$
$\mu^{*}\left(\mathcal{L}_{k} \otimes \operatorname{det} F_{2,1}^{\vee}\right)(k=1,2,3)$ satisfy $\mathcal{M}_{k}^{\otimes 2} \cong \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(\operatorname{det} E_{0}^{\vee}\right)^{\otimes 2}$, and

$$
H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{M}_{k}\right) \cong H^{0}\left(C, S^{2} E_{0} \otimes \mathcal{L}_{k} \otimes \operatorname{det} F_{2,1}^{\vee}\right) \cong H^{0}\left(C, \mathcal{L}_{k} \otimes\left(\mathcal{L}_{1} \oplus \mathcal{L}_{2} \oplus \mathcal{L}_{3}\right)\right) \cong \mathbf{C}
$$

by Lemma 4.12 , hence $\zeta$ has three multiple fibers $2 \mathcal{F}_{k}(k=1,2,3)$ with $\mathcal{F}_{k}$ satisfying $\mathcal{M}_{k} \cong \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(\mathcal{F}_{k}\right)$.

Next, we study the complete linear system of $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(\left(\operatorname{det} E_{0}^{\vee}\right)^{\otimes 2} \otimes \mathcal{L}_{k}\right)$. We obtain

$$
H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(\left(\operatorname{det} E_{0}^{\vee}\right)^{\otimes 2} \otimes \mathcal{L}_{k}\right)\right) \cong \mathbf{C}
$$

by the same caluculation as above. Therefore, the complete linear system of $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes$ $\mu^{*}\left(\left(\operatorname{det} E_{0}^{\vee}\right)^{\otimes 2} \otimes \mathcal{L}_{k}\right)$ consists of a unique effective divisor. Since

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(\left(\operatorname{det} E_{0}^{\vee}\right)^{\otimes 2} \otimes \mathcal{L}_{1}\right) \cong \mathcal{M}_{2} \otimes \mathcal{M}_{3} \\
& \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(\left(\operatorname{det} E_{0}^{\vee}\right)^{\otimes 2} \otimes \mathcal{L}_{2}\right) \cong \mathcal{M}_{3} \otimes \mathcal{M}_{1} \\
& \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(\left(\operatorname{det} E_{0}^{\vee}\right)^{\otimes 2} \otimes \mathcal{L}_{3}\right) \cong \mathcal{M}_{1} \otimes \mathcal{M}_{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

the complete linear systems consist of $\mathcal{F}_{2}+\mathcal{F}_{3}, \mathcal{F}_{3}+\mathcal{F}_{1}, \mathcal{F}_{1}+\mathcal{F}_{2}$, respectively.
If $e-d=1$, then since $\operatorname{deg}\left(\operatorname{det} E_{0}\right)^{\otimes 2}=2 e=2 d+2$ and $\operatorname{deg}(\operatorname{det} E)=e+d=2 d+1$ hold, there exists a unique point $p \in C$ with $\left(\operatorname{det} E_{0}\right)^{\otimes 2} \cong(\operatorname{det} E) \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}(p)$. Hence we have

$$
\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee} \cong\left(\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(\operatorname{det} E_{0}\right)^{\otimes 2}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} \mathcal{O}_{C}(p) .
$$

Since the complete linear system of $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(\operatorname{det} E_{0}^{\vee}\right)^{\otimes 2}$ is a pencil without base points, any base point of $\left|4 C_{0}-\mu^{*} D\right|$ exists only on $\Gamma:=\mu^{-1}(p)$. Let $p_{k} \in C$ be a point with $\left(\operatorname{det} E_{0}\right)^{\otimes 2} \otimes \mathcal{L}_{k} \cong(\operatorname{det} E) \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}\left(p_{k}\right)$, and denote $\Gamma_{k}:=\mu^{-1}\left(p_{k}\right)$ for $k=1,2,3$. Then we have $\Gamma_{1}+\mathcal{F}_{2}+\mathcal{F}_{3}, \Gamma_{2}+\mathcal{F}_{3}+\mathcal{F}_{1}, \Gamma_{3}+\mathcal{F}_{1}+\mathcal{F}_{2} \in\left|4 C_{0}-\mu^{*} D\right|$. Since $p$, $p_{1}, p_{2}, p_{3}$ are pairwise different, and since $\mathcal{F}_{1}, \mathcal{F}_{2}$ and $\mathcal{F}_{3}$ intersect $\Gamma$ at different points, we obtain $\mathrm{Bs}\left|4 C_{0}-\mu^{*} D\right|=\emptyset$.

If $e-d=0$, then $\operatorname{det} F_{2,1} \otimes L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}$ is isomorphic to one of $\mathcal{O}_{C}$ and $\mathcal{L}_{k}(k=1,2,3)$ by assumption.

If $\operatorname{det} F_{2,1} \otimes L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}$ holds, then since we have

$$
\operatorname{det} E \cong L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \otimes \operatorname{det} F_{2,1} \cong L_{0}^{\otimes 4} \otimes\left(\operatorname{det} F_{2,1}\right)^{\otimes 2} \cong \operatorname{det} E_{0},
$$

the complete linear system of $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}$ is a pencil without base points as above.

If $\operatorname{det} F_{2,1} \otimes L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \cong \mathcal{L}_{1}$ holds, then since

$$
\operatorname{det} E \cong L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1} \otimes \operatorname{det} F_{2,1} \cong L_{0}^{\otimes 4} \otimes\left(\operatorname{det} F_{2,1}\right)^{\otimes 2} \otimes \mathcal{L}_{1} \cong\left(\operatorname{det} E_{0}\right)^{\otimes 2} \otimes \mathcal{L}_{1} \text {, }
$$

we have

$$
\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee} \cong \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(\left(\operatorname{det} E_{0}\right)^{\otimes 2} \otimes \mathcal{L}_{1}\right) .
$$

Hence we obtain $\left|4 C_{0}-\mu^{*} D\right|=\left\{\mathcal{F}_{2}+\mathcal{F}_{3}\right\}$. Therefore, $\sigma^{-1}\left(\mathcal{F}_{2} \cup \mathcal{F}_{3}\right) \cap Y_{0}$ is contained in $\operatorname{Bs}\left|4 Y_{1}-\sigma^{*} \mu^{*} D\right|$. Since $Z_{\infty} \neq 0$ on $Y_{0}$, if we denote $z_{0}:=Z_{0} / Z_{\infty}$, then a general $\Psi \in H^{0}\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{X}\left(4 Y_{1}\right) \otimes \sigma^{*} \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$ can be written as
$\Psi=\psi_{0} z_{0}^{4}+\psi_{1} z_{0}^{3}+\psi_{2} z_{0}^{2}+\psi_{3} z_{0}+\psi_{4}, \quad \psi_{i} \in H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(i C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes(4-i)} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)\right.$,
and $\psi_{4}$ has zero of order 1 along $\mathcal{F}_{2} \cup \mathcal{F}_{3}$. Hence the divisor $(\Psi)$ on $X$ defined by a general $\Psi$ is nonsingular along $\sigma^{-1}\left(\mathcal{F}_{2} \cup \mathcal{F}_{3}\right) \cap Y_{0}$.

We can obtain the same result in the case $\operatorname{det} F_{2,1} \otimes L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \cong \mathcal{L}_{2}, \mathcal{L}_{3}$ by the same calculation.

As in the case of (ii) with $e$ even, we can show that if we denote $S^{\prime \prime}:=(\Psi)$, then $S^{\prime \prime} \cap Y_{\infty}$ is a disjoint union of $3 d-e$ pieces of $(-1)$-curves and their images by $\rho$ are nonsingular points of $S^{\prime}:=\rho\left(S^{\prime \prime}\right) \subset W$.
(iii) The case where ( $e=3 d>0$ and $L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3} \not \approx \operatorname{det} F_{2,1}$ ), or ( $3 d<e<4 d$ ). Note that since $e$ is assumed to be odd, we have $e \neq 4 d$.

Since we have $H^{0}\left(Y, \mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes 4} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)\right) \cong H^{0}\left(C, \operatorname{det} F_{2,1} \otimes L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3}\right)=0$, we have to study the complete linear system of $\mathcal{O}_{X}\left(3 Y_{1}\right) \otimes \sigma^{*}\left(\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$ for the same reason as in the case (iii) with $e$ even. Hence we have to consider the base point of the complete linear systems of $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes 3} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$ and $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}$ similarly as before.

Let us look at $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes 3} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$. We fix any point $q \in C$, and denote $\Gamma:=\mu^{-1}(q) \subset Y$. Since we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& H^{1}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes 3} \otimes\left(\operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right) \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}(-q)\right)\right) \\
& \quad \cong H^{1}\left(C, F_{2,1} \otimes\left(\operatorname{det} F_{2,1}^{\vee}\right) \otimes L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 2} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}(-q)\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

and
$\operatorname{deg}\left(F_{2,1} \otimes \operatorname{det}\left(F_{2,1}^{\vee}\right) \otimes L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 2} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}(-q)\right)=1+2\left(-1+e_{0}+2 d-2 e_{0}-1\right)=4 d-e-2$, and since $e$ is odd, the restriction mapping

$$
H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes 3} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)\right) \rightarrow H^{0}\left(\Gamma, \mathcal{O}_{\Gamma}\left(C_{0}\right)\right) \cong H^{0}\left(\mathbf{P}^{1}, \mathcal{O}_{\left.\mathbf{P}^{1}(1)\right)}\right.
$$

is surjective when $4 d-e \geq 3$ holds. Hence the complete linear system of $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes$ $\mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes 3} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$ has no base point.

In the case $4 d-e=1$, since we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes 3} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)=\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(C, E_{0} \otimes L^{\otimes 3} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)\right. \\
& \quad=\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(C, F_{2,1} \otimes L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 2} \otimes \operatorname{det} F_{2,1}^{\vee}\right)=1+2\left(e_{0}+2 d-2 e_{0}-1\right) \\
& \quad=1+4 d-2 e_{0}-2=1,
\end{aligned}
$$

the complete linear system of $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes 3} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$ consists of a unique irreducible nonsingular section $C^{\prime}$ of $\mu$. Therefore, the set of base points of the complete linear system of $\mathcal{O}_{X}\left(3 Y_{1}\right) \otimes \sigma^{*}\left(\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$ contains $\sigma^{-1}\left(C^{\prime}\right) \cap Y_{\infty}$. Since $Z_{0} \neq 0$ on $Y_{\infty}$, if we denote $z_{\infty}:=Z_{\infty} / Z_{0}, \tilde{\Psi}$ can be written as

$$
\tilde{\Psi}=\psi_{1}+\psi_{2} z_{\infty}+\psi_{3} z_{\infty}^{2}+\psi_{4} z_{\infty}^{3}
$$

on $Y_{\infty}$, and $\psi_{1} \in H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes 3} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)\right)$ has zeros of order 1 along $C^{\prime}$, so the divisor $(\tilde{\Psi})$ defined by a general $\tilde{\Psi}$ is nonsingular along $\sigma^{-1}\left(C^{\prime}\right) \cap Y_{\infty}$.

Let us now look at $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}$. We fix any point $q \in C$, and denote $\Gamma:=\mu^{-1}(q)$. We have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& H^{1}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(\operatorname{det} E^{\vee} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}(-q)\right)\right) \\
& \quad \cong H^{1}\left(C,\left(\operatorname{det} F_{2,1}\right) \otimes L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}(-q)\right)^{\oplus 2} \\
& \quad \oplus\left(\bigoplus_{k=1}^{3} H^{1}\left(C,\left(\operatorname{det} F_{2,1}\right) \otimes L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}(-q) \otimes \mathcal{L}_{k}\right)\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Under our assumption, we have
$\operatorname{deg}\left(\operatorname{det} F_{2,1} \otimes L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}(-q)\right)=\operatorname{deg}\left(\operatorname{det} F_{2,1} \otimes L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \mathcal{O}_{C}(-q) \otimes \mathcal{L}_{k}\right)=e-d-1>0$.
Thus $H^{1}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(\operatorname{det} E^{\vee} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}(-q)\right)=0\right.$ holds. Hence the restriction mapping

$$
H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right) \rightarrow H^{0}\left(\Gamma, \mathcal{O}_{\Gamma}\left(4 C_{o}\right)\right) \cong H^{0}\left(\mathbf{P}^{1}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{1}}(4)\right)
$$

is always surjective. Consequently, the complete linear system of $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}$ has no base point.
(iv) The case where $4 d<e$. The images of all the members of $\left|4 Y_{1}-\sigma^{*} \mu^{*} D\right|$ in $W$ have non-isolated singularity for the same reason as in the case (iv) with $e$ even.

Remark (1) We can prove Theorem 4.11 above by using an isogeny $\varphi: \tilde{C} \rightarrow C$ with $\operatorname{deg} \varphi=2$ of elliptic curves as in $\S 4.3 .4$ below where we use an isogeny of degree 3 .
(2) The existence of the linear pencil $\zeta: Y \rightarrow \mathbf{P}^{1}$ and the multiple fibers $2 \mathcal{F}_{k}(k=$ $1,2,3)$ above was proved by Suwa $[19, \S 4]$. What we mentioned in the proof of Theorem 4.11 is a re-interpretation of Suwa's result by means of Lemma 4.12 due to Ashikaga.

### 4.2.3 The canonical mapping

In this section, we study the canonical mappings of those surfaces whose existences were shown in $\S \S 4.10-4.11$. Let $E_{0}$ be a locally free sheaf of rank 2 and degree $e$ over an elliptic curve $C$, and $L$ an invertible sheaf of degree $d$ over $C$. Furthermore, $E_{0}$ and $L$ are assumed to satisfy the conditions of Theorem 4.10 when $e$ is even, and Theorem 4.11 when $e$ is odd.

Lemma 4.13 If $\mu: Y:=\mathbf{P}\left(E_{0}\right) \rightarrow C$ is the ruled surface associated to $E_{0} \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(2,4)$, and $C_{0}$ is a section of $\mu$ with $\mu_{*} \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \cong E_{0}$, then $\Phi_{\left|C_{0}\right|}$ is birational onto its image.

Proof Let $\delta \in \operatorname{Div}(C)$ be a divisor satisfying $L_{0} \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}(\delta)$. Since

$$
H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} \mathcal{O}_{C}(-\delta)\right) \cong H^{0}\left(C, E_{0} \otimes L_{0}^{-1}\right) \cong H^{0}\left(C, F_{2}\right) \cong \mathbf{C},
$$

there exists a section $C^{\prime}$ of $\mu$ with $\left|C_{0}-\mu^{*} \delta\right|=\left\{C^{\prime}\right\}$.
Let $q_{1}, q_{2} \in Y \backslash C^{\prime}$ be any pair of points contained in different fibers of $\mu$, and $\Gamma_{1}$ the fiber of $\mu$ containing $q_{1}$.

Since $\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}-\Gamma_{1}\right)\right)=2$ and $\left(C_{0}-\Gamma_{1}\right)^{2}=2>0,\left|C_{0}-\Gamma_{1}\right|$ has base points. If $\Gamma$ is any fiber of $\mu$, then $H^{1}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}-\Gamma_{1}-\Gamma\right)\right) \cong H^{1}\left(C, E_{0} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}\left(-p_{1}-p\right)\right)$, where $p_{1}:=\mu\left(q_{1}\right)$ and $p:=\mu(\Gamma)$. Hence if $p$ satisfies $\mathcal{O}_{C}\left(p_{1}+p\right) \not \not L_{0}$, then the above cohomology group is 0 , and the restriction mapping

$$
H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}-\Gamma_{1}\right)\right) \rightarrow H^{0}\left(\Gamma, \mathcal{O}_{\Gamma}\left(C_{0}-\Gamma_{1}\right)\right)
$$

is surjective. Let $p_{1} \in C$ be the point with $L_{0} \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}\left(p_{1}+p_{1}^{\prime}\right)$, and denote $\Gamma_{1}^{\prime}:=\mu^{-1}\left(p_{1}^{\prime}\right)$. The base points of $\left|C_{0}-\Gamma_{1}\right|$ are on $\Gamma_{1}$. Since $\left(C_{0}-\Gamma_{1}\right) \Gamma_{1}^{\prime}=1$, the number of the base points is one. On the other hand, since $\left(C_{0}-\Gamma_{1}^{\prime}\right) C^{\prime}=1$, the base point of $\left|C_{0}-\Gamma_{1}^{\prime}\right|$ is the intersection point of $C^{\prime}$ and $\Gamma_{1}^{\prime}$. Since $q_{2} \notin C^{\prime}$, there exists a member $C_{0}^{\prime}$ of $\left|C_{0}-\Gamma_{1}\right|$ which does not contain $q_{2}$. Then $C_{0}^{\prime}+\Gamma_{1}$ contains $q_{1}$ but not $q_{2}$. Hence $\left|C_{0}\right|$ separates $q_{1}$ and $q_{2}$, and $\Phi_{\left|C_{0}\right|}$ is birational onto its image.
q.e.d.

Lemma 4.14 Let $T$ be a tautological divisor of the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle $\pi: W:=\mathbf{P}(E) \rightarrow C$ associated to a locally free sheaf $E=E_{0} \oplus L\left(E_{0} \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(2, e), L \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(1, d)\right)$ satisfying $\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \cong E$. Assume that $E_{0}$ and L satisfy the conditions of Theorem 4.10 (e even) or 4.11 (e odd). Then $\Phi_{|T|}$ is a birational mapping onto its image if $e+d \geq 5$ holds.

Proof We can show that the restriction of $\Phi_{|T|}$ to a general fiber $F$ of $\pi$ gives an isomorphism of $F$ onto its image as in the proof of Lemma 4.2.

Let $\rho: X \rightarrow W, \sigma: X \rightarrow Y, \mu: Y \rightarrow C, C_{0}, C_{1}, Y_{1}, Y_{0}, Y_{\infty}, Z_{0}$ and $Z_{\infty}$ be as in the previous section. Since $\Phi_{\left|Y_{1}\right|}=\Phi_{|T|} \circ \rho$, if $\Phi_{\left|Y_{1}\right|}$ is birational onto its image, $\Phi_{|T|}$ is also birational onto its image. Therefore, it suffices to show that there exists a Zariski open subset of $X$ such that any pair of points in it contained in different fibers are separated by $\left|Y_{1}\right|$.

Since we have $H^{0}\left(X, \quad \mathcal{O}_{X}\left(Y_{1}\right)\right) \cong H^{0}\left(Y, \quad \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right)\right) \oplus H^{0}(C, \quad L)$, any $\Psi \in$ $H^{0}\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{X}\left(Y_{1}\right)\right)$ can be written as

$$
\Psi=\psi_{0} Z_{0}+\psi_{\infty} Z_{\infty}, \quad \psi \in H^{0}(C, L), \psi_{\infty} \in H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right)\right)
$$

Hence if $d \geq 3$, then $X \backslash Y_{0}$ satisfies the above condition. (Look at all the elements of the form $\psi_{0} Z_{0}$.) If $e \geq 6$, since there exist a section $C^{\prime}$ of $\mu$ and a divisor $\delta \in \operatorname{Div}(C)$
with $\operatorname{deg} \delta \geq 3$ such that $C_{0} \sim C^{\prime}+\mu^{*} \delta$ holds, $X \backslash\left\{Y_{0} \cup \mu^{-1}\left(C_{0}\right)\right\}$ satisfies the above condition. (Look at all the elements of the form $\psi_{\infty} Z_{\infty}$.) If $(e, d)=(5,2)$, then $X \backslash\left\{Y_{0} \cup Y_{\infty} \cup \mu^{-1}\left(C_{0}\right)\right\}$ satisfies the above condition. (Look at all the elements of the form $\psi_{0} Z_{0}$ and $\psi_{\infty} Z_{\infty}$.)

In the cases $(e, d)=(4,2),(4,1), X \backslash\left\{Y_{\infty} \cup \mu^{-1}\left(C^{\prime}\right)\right\}$ satisfies the above condition by Lemma 4.14. (Look at all the elements of the form $\psi_{\infty} Z_{\infty}$.)

If $(e, d)=(3,2)$, then we have $\mathrm{Bs}\left|Y_{1}\right|=\emptyset$, and hence $\Phi_{\left|Y_{1}\right|}$ is a morphism. Since $Y_{1}^{3}=5$ and the degree of the image of $X$ cannot be $1, \Phi_{\left|Y_{1}\right|}$ is a birational morphism. q.e.d.

Corollary 4.15 The canonical mapping of any surface $S$ whose existence is guaranteed by Theorem 4.10, Theorem 4.11 and condition (A) is birational onto its image if $p_{g}(S) \geq$ 5 holds. If $(e, d) \neq(4,1)$, then the canonical mapping is a morphism. If $(e, d)=(4,1)$, then $\left|K_{S}\right|$ has a unique isolated base point, and its canonical image is non-normal.

Proof The birationality can be proved in the same way as in the proof of Corollary 4.3. If $e \geq 3$ and $d \geq 2$, then Bs $\left|Y_{1}\right|=\emptyset$ by the proof of Lemma 4.14, and $\Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}$ is birational onto its image in the case $(e, d) \neq(4,1)$. In the case $(e, d)=(4,1)$, the base locus of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ contains the section $C_{1}:=\mathbf{P}\left(E / E_{0}\right)$ of $\pi$ by the proof of Theorem 4.11. On the other hand, the base locus of $|T|$ consists of a unique point contained in $C_{1}$. Hence the complete linear system of the canonical bundle of a general member $S$ has only one isolated base point. The non-normality of the canonical image can be shown in the same way as in the proof of Corollary 4.4.
q.e.d.

Proposition 4.16 Let $\pi: W:=\mathbf{P}(E) \rightarrow C$ be the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle associated to the locally free sheaf $E:=E_{0} \oplus L,\left(E_{0} \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(2,2), L \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(1,1)\right)$, $T$ the tautological divisor with $\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \cong E$, and $L_{0} \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(1,1), L_{1} \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(1,0)$ the invertible sheaves satisfying $E_{0} \cong L_{0} \otimes F_{2}$ and $L \cong L_{0} \otimes L_{1}$. If $S \in\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ is irreducible and nonsingular, then we have the following:
(1) $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}=9$, if $L_{1}^{\otimes 2} \not \approx \mathcal{O}_{C}$.
(2) $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}=8$, if $L_{1}^{\otimes 2} \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}$ and $L_{1} \not \models \mathcal{O}_{C}$.
(3) $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}=4$, if $L_{1} \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}$.

Proof First, we consider the cases (1) and (2). Since $\operatorname{deg} L=d=1$, there exists a point $p \in C$ with $L \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}(p)$. Furthermore, there exists a point $q \in Y$ with Bs $\left|C_{0}\right|=\{q\}$ by the proof of Lemma 4.13. Hence we see that the base locus of $\left|Y_{1}\right|$ is the union of the curve $(\mu \circ \sigma)^{-1}(p) \cap Y_{\infty}$ and the point $\sigma^{-1}(q) \cap Y_{0}$ in the same way as in the proof of Lemma 4.14.

Recall that any $\Psi \in H^{0}\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{X}\left(4 Y_{1}\right) \otimes \sigma^{*} \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$ can be written as

$$
\begin{gathered}
\Psi=\psi_{0} Z_{0}^{4}+\psi_{1} Z_{0}^{3} Z_{\infty}+\psi_{2} Z_{0}^{2} Z_{\infty}^{2}+\psi_{3} Z_{0} Z_{\infty}^{3}+\psi_{4} Z_{\infty}^{4}, \\
\psi_{i} \in H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(i C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L^{\otimes(4-i)} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)\right) .
\end{gathered}
$$

There exists a section $C^{\prime}$ of $\mu$ with $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C^{\prime}\right) \cong \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} L_{0}^{-1}$ by $\S 4.2 .1$. Since $\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee} \cong \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C^{\prime}\right) \otimes \mu^{*}\left(L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}\right)$ and $\operatorname{deg}\left(L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}\right)=1$, there exists a point $p_{0} \in C$ with $L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}\left(p_{0}\right)$, and the intersection point $q^{\prime}$ of $\mu^{-1}\left(p_{0}\right)$ with $C^{\prime}$ satisfies Bs $\left|4 C_{0}-\mu^{*} D\right|=\left\{q^{\prime}\right\}$. Hence we have $\sigma^{-1}\left(q^{\prime}\right) \cap Y_{0} \subset \operatorname{Bs}\left|4 Y_{1}-\sigma^{*} \mu^{*} D\right|$.

Since $L^{\otimes 4} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee} \cong L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3}, \operatorname{deg} L_{0}=1$ and $\operatorname{deg} L_{1}=0$, we have $\operatorname{deg}\left(L^{\otimes 4} \otimes\right.$ $\left.\operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)=1$, and there exists a point $p^{\prime} \in C$ with $L^{\otimes 4} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee} \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}\left(p^{\prime}\right)$. Hence we have $(\mu \circ \sigma)^{-1}\left(p^{\prime}\right) \cap Y_{\infty} \subset \operatorname{Bs}\left|4 Y_{1}-\sigma^{*} \mu^{*} D\right|$.
$q$ coincide with $q^{\prime}$ if and only if $L_{0} \cong L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1}$, hence $L_{1} \cong \mathcal{O}_{C} . p$ coincide with $p^{\prime}$ if and only if $L \cong L^{\otimes 4} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}$. Since $L \cong L_{0} \otimes L_{1}$ and $L^{\otimes 4} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee} \cong L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3}$, this is equivalent to $L_{1}^{\otimes 2} \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}$.

Hence, if $L_{1}^{\otimes 2} \neq \mathcal{O}_{C}$ holds, then we have $q \neq q^{\prime}$ and $p \neq p^{\prime}$, and the complete linear system of the canonical divisor of a general member of $\left|4 Y_{1}-\sigma^{*} \mu^{*} D\right|$ has no base point. Therefore, in this case, we obtain $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}=9$.

If $L_{1}^{\otimes 2} \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}$ and $L_{1} \not \approx \mathcal{O}_{C}$ hold, then we have $q \neq q^{\prime}$ and $p=p^{\prime}$. Hence the complete linear system of the canonical divisor of a general member of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ has one isolated base point. We have the following elementary transformation (cf. [15]):

where $\pi^{\prime}: W^{\prime} \rightarrow C$ is the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle associated to a locally free sheaf $E^{\prime}:=E_{0} \oplus \mathcal{O}_{C}$ of rank 3 over $C, \phi$ is the blowing-up at the isolated base point of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$, and $\phi^{\prime}$ is the blowing-up along the line $\mathbf{P}\left(E_{0} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C} \mathcal{O}_{p}\right) \subset W^{\prime}$. Let $T^{\prime}$ be the tautological divisor with $\pi_{*}^{\prime} \mathcal{O}_{W^{\prime}}\left(T^{\prime}\right) \cong E^{\prime}$. The complete linear system $|T|$ on $W$ is mapped to the complete linear system $\left|T^{\prime}\right|$ by this elementary transformation. Furthermore, if $\bar{S}$ is the proper transform of a general member $S$ by $\phi$, and if we denote $S^{\prime}:=\phi^{\prime}(\bar{S})$, then we have $S^{\prime} \sim 4 T^{\prime}$ by the assumption $L_{1}^{\otimes 2} \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}$. Since $\left|T^{\prime}\right|$ has no base point on $\pi^{\prime-1}(p)$, the complete linear system of $\mathcal{O}_{W^{\prime}}\left(T^{\prime}\right) \otimes \mathcal{O}_{W^{\prime}} \mathcal{O}_{S^{\prime}}$ on $S^{\prime}$ has no base point. Since $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}=\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{\left|K_{\bar{S}}\right|}$, and since $\Phi_{\left|K_{\bar{S}}\right|}$ factors as

$$
\Phi_{\left|K_{\bar{S}}\right|}: \bar{S} \rightarrow S^{\prime} \rightarrow \Phi_{\left|T^{\prime}\right|}\left(S^{\prime}\right) \hookrightarrow \mathbf{P}^{n}, \quad\left(n:=p_{g}(S)-1\right),
$$

we have $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}=T^{\prime 2} S^{\prime}=4 T^{\prime 3}=4 \operatorname{deg} E^{\prime}=8$.
Finally, we consider the case (3), i.e., the case $E \cong L \otimes\left(F_{2} \oplus \mathcal{O}_{C}\right)$. If $p, p^{\prime}, q$ and $q^{\prime}$ are as above, we have $p=p^{\prime}, q=q^{\prime}$ and $\mu(q)=p$. We can prove

$$
\mathrm{Bs}\left|Y_{1}\right|=\mathrm{Bs}\left|4 Y_{1}-\sigma^{*} \mu^{*} D\right|=\sigma^{-1}(q) \cup\left\{(\mu \circ \sigma)^{-1} \cap Y_{\infty}\right\}
$$

in the same way as above, and hence, $\mathrm{Bs}|T|=\mathrm{Bs}\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ is a line contained in a fiber $\pi^{-1}(p) \subset W$.

We have the same elementary transformation as in the case (2). (We use the same notation as above.) In this case, $\mathrm{Bs}\left|T^{\prime}\right|$ consists of one point contained in $\pi^{\prime-1}(p)$, and the image $S^{\prime}$ of the proper transform of a general member $S \in\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ in $W^{\prime}$ goes through this point. If $T_{0}^{\prime}$ is the image of $\mathbf{P}(E / L)=\mathbf{P}\left(L \otimes F_{2}\right) \hookrightarrow W$ in $W^{\prime}$, then we have $T_{0}^{\prime} \sim T^{\prime}$. Let us regard $C_{0}, C^{\prime}$ and $\mu^{-1}(p)$ as divisors on $\mathbf{P}(E / L)$ or $T_{0}^{\prime}$ in view of $Y \cong \mathbf{P}(E / L) \cong$ $T_{0}^{\prime}$. In this notation, we have $\mathcal{O}_{W^{\prime}}\left(T_{0}^{\prime}\right) \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{W}} \mathcal{O}_{T_{0}^{\prime}} \cong \mathcal{O}_{T_{0}^{\prime}}\left(C_{0}\right)\left(\cong \mathcal{O}_{T_{0}^{\prime}}\left(C^{\prime}+\mu^{-1}(p)\right)\right)$. Since the restriction of $S$ to $\mathbf{P}(E / L)$ is linearly equivalent to $4 C^{\prime}+\mu^{-1}(p)$ and since $S^{\prime} \sim 4 T^{\prime}$, the restriction of $S^{\prime}$ to $T_{0}^{\prime}$ is the sum of a divisor $G$ which is linearly equivalent to $4 C^{\prime}+\mu^{-1}(p)$ and $3 \mu^{-1}(p)$. $G$ goes through $q=\mu^{-1}(p) \cap C^{\prime}$, and since $S$ is generic, $G$ is nonsingular at $q . C_{0}$ also goes through $q$ and nonsingular at $q$, and $C_{0}$ and $G$ have different tangents.

Let $\nu: \tilde{W} \rightarrow W^{\prime}$ be the blowing-up at $q, \tilde{T}$ and $\tilde{S}$ be the proper transforms of $T^{\prime}$ and $S^{\prime}$ respectively, and denote $\tilde{\mathcal{E}}:=\nu^{-1}(q)$. Since $\nu^{*} T^{\prime} \sim \tilde{T}+\tilde{\mathcal{E}}$, we can prove $\nu^{*} S^{\prime} \sim \tilde{S}+4 \tilde{\mathcal{E}}$ by the above result. Although $|\tilde{T}|$ has one isolated base point, $\tilde{S}$ does not go through the point. Hence we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \operatorname{deg} \Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}=\operatorname{deg}\left(\Phi_{|\tilde{T}|} \mid \tilde{S}\right)=\tilde{T}^{2} \tilde{S}=\left(\nu^{*} T^{\prime}-\tilde{\mathcal{E}}\right)^{2}\left(\nu^{*} S^{\prime}-4 \tilde{\mathcal{E}}\right) \\
& \quad=\left(\left(\nu^{*} T^{\prime}\right)^{2}-2\left(\nu^{*} T^{\prime}\right) \tilde{\mathcal{E}}+\tilde{\mathcal{E}}\right)\left(\nu^{*} S^{\prime}-4 \tilde{\mathcal{E}}\right)=T^{\prime 2} S^{\prime}-4 \tilde{\mathcal{E}}^{3}=4 T^{\prime 3}-4=4
\end{aligned}
$$

q.e.d.

We treat the case $(e, d)=(1,1)$ in Propsition 4.41 in the next section.
In the case $(e, d)=(3,1)$, we have the following:
Lemma 4.17 Let $\pi: W:=\mathbf{P}(E) \rightarrow C$ be the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle associated to the locally free sheaf $E:=E_{0} \oplus L,\left(E_{0} \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(2,3), L \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(1,1)\right)$, and $T$ the tautological divisor with $\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \cong E$. Then $\Phi_{|T|}$ is a triple covering of $W$ over $\mathbf{P}^{3}$.

We prove the following lemma to show Lemma 4.17:

Lemma 4.18 If $\mu: Y:=\mathbf{P}\left(E_{0}\right) \rightarrow C$ is the ruled surface associated to the locally free sheaf $E_{0} \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(2,3)$, and if $C_{0}$ is a section of $\mu$ with $\mu_{*} \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \cong E_{0}$, then we have $\mathrm{Bs}\left|C_{0}\right|=\emptyset$.

Proof Let $\Gamma$ be any fiber of $\mu$, and denote $p:=\mu(\Gamma) \in C$. Since we have

$$
H^{1}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}-\Gamma\right)\right) \cong H^{1}\left(C, E_{0} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}(-p)\right)=0
$$

the restriction mapping

$$
H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right)\right) \rightarrow H^{0}\left(\Gamma, \mathcal{O}_{\Gamma}\left(C_{0}\right)\right) \cong H^{0}\left(\mathbf{P}^{1}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{1}}(1)\right)
$$

is surjective, and $\left|C_{0}\right|$ has no base point.
q.e.d.

Proof of Lemma 4.17 First we consider the pull-back of $|T|$ to $X$. Since

$$
H^{0}\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{X}\left(Y_{1}\right)\right) \cong H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right)\right) \oplus H^{0}(C, L)
$$

any $Z \in H^{0}\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{X}\left(Y_{1}\right)\right)$ can be written as

$$
Z=\psi_{0} Z_{0}+\psi_{\infty} Z_{\infty}, \quad \psi_{0} \in H^{0}(C, L), \psi_{\infty} \in H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right)\right)
$$

Since $\operatorname{Bs}\left|C_{0}\right|=\emptyset$ by Lemma 4.18, and since $\operatorname{deg} L=1$, the base locus of $\left|Y_{1}\right|$ is the curve $Y_{\infty} \cap(\mu \circ \sigma)^{-1}(p)$, where $p \in C$ is the point with $L \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}(p)$. This curve is contracted to a point $q$ by $\rho: X \rightarrow W$, and we have $\operatorname{Bs}|T|=\{q\}$.

Let $\pi^{\prime}: W^{\prime}:=\mathbf{P}\left(E^{\prime}\right) \rightarrow C$ be the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle associated to the locally free sheaf $E^{\prime}:=E_{0} \oplus \mathcal{O}_{C}$, and $T^{\prime}$ the tautological divisor with $\pi_{*}^{\prime} \mathcal{O}_{W^{\prime}}\left(T^{\prime}\right) \cong E^{\prime}$. We obtain an elementary transformation

as before where $\phi$ is the blowing-up at $q$. The image by $\phi^{\prime}$ of the proper transform of $T$ by $\phi$ is linearly equivalent to $T^{\prime}$.

If $F^{\prime}$ is any fiber of $\pi^{\prime}$, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& H^{1}\left(W^{\prime}, \mathcal{O}_{W^{\prime}}\left(T^{\prime}-F^{\prime}\right)\right) \cong H^{1}\left(C, E^{\prime} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}(-p)\right) \\
& \quad \cong H^{1}\left(C, E_{0} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}(-p)\right) \oplus H^{1}\left(C, \mathcal{O}_{C}(-p)\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
H^{1}\left(W^{\prime}, \mathcal{O}_{W^{\prime}}\left(T^{\prime}\right)\right) \cong H^{1}\left(C, E^{\prime}\right) \cong H^{1}\left(C, E_{0}\right) \oplus H^{1}\left(C, \mathcal{O}_{C}\right)
$$

These cohomology groups are one-dimensional and hence the canonical homomorphism $H^{1}\left(W^{\prime}, \mathcal{O}_{W^{\prime}}\left(T^{\prime}-F^{\prime}\right)\right) \rightarrow H^{1}\left(W^{\prime}, \mathcal{O}_{W^{\prime}}\left(T^{\prime}\right)\right)$ is an isomorphism. Therefore the restriction mapping

$$
H^{0}\left(W^{\prime}, \mathcal{O}_{W^{\prime}}\left(T^{\prime}\right)\right) \rightarrow H^{0}\left(F^{\prime}, \mathcal{O}_{F^{\prime}}\left(T^{\prime}\right)\right)
$$

is surjective, and we obtain $\operatorname{Bs}\left|T^{\prime}\right|=\emptyset$. Hence $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{|T|}=\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{\left|T^{\prime}\right|}=\left(T^{\prime}\right)^{3}=3$ holds. q.e.d.

In this case, we may assume $E \cong L \otimes\left(F_{2,1} \oplus \mathcal{O}_{C}\right)$ by denoting $E_{2,1}:=E_{0} \otimes L^{-1}$.

Lemma 4.19 Let $\mu: Y \rightarrow C$ be the ruled surface associated to a locally free sheaf $E_{0} \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(2,3)$ of rank 2 over $C$, and $C_{0}$ a section of $\mu$ with $\mu_{*} \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \cong E_{0}$. Then $\Phi_{\left|4 C_{0}-\mu^{*} D\right|}$ is a birational morphism onto its image for any divisor $D \in \operatorname{Div}(C)$ of degree 4.

Proof It is known that $Y$ is isomorphic to the symmetric product of $C$ of degree 2 (cf. [6]). Let $\eta: C \times C \rightarrow Y$ be the quotient morphism. A point $q$ of $Y$ may be written as $q=\left(p, p^{\prime}\right)$ for two points $p, p^{\prime} \in C$ (possibly $p=p^{\prime}$ ). The ruling $\mu: Y \rightarrow C$ is expressed as $\mu(q)=p+p^{\prime}$ where + is the group addition of the elliptic curve $C$ once an appropriate point of $C$ is chosen as $0 . C \times\{p\}$ and $\{p\} \times C$ are mapped to the same curve $C_{p}$ on $Y$ by $\eta$ for any point $p \in C$. Since $(C \times\{p\}+\{p\} \times C)^{2}=2$ and $\operatorname{deg} \eta=2$, this curve $C_{p}$ is a section of $\mu$ with self-intersection number 1 . There exists a fiber $\Gamma$ of $\mu$ with $C_{0} \sim C_{p}+\Gamma$.

Hence the complete linear system $\left|4 C_{0}-\mu^{*} D\right|$ contains a member of the form $\sum_{i=1}^{4} C_{p_{i}},\left(p_{i} \in C, i=1,2,3,4\right)$. Since $\eta^{-1}\left(\cup_{i=1}^{4} C_{p_{i}}\right)=\bigcup_{i=1}^{4}\left\{\left(C \times\left\{p_{i}\right\}\right) \cup\left(\left\{p_{i}\right\} \times C\right)\right\}$, for any point $q \in Y$, there exist points $p_{i}(i=1,2,3,4)$ such that $\cup_{i=1}^{4} C_{p_{i}}$ does not contain $q$. Hence we have $\operatorname{Bs}\left|4 C_{0}-\mu^{*} D\right|=\emptyset$.

Let $q, q^{*} \in Y$ be distinct points which are not contained in the image under $\eta$ of the diagonal of $C \times C$, and denote $q=\left(p, p^{\prime}\right)$. Then $C_{p}$ and $C_{p^{\prime}}$ are two distinct sections of $\mu$ with self-intersection numbers 1 . Since $C_{p} C_{p^{\prime}}=1$, at least one of $C_{p}$ and $C_{p^{\prime}}$ does not go through $q^{*}$. We may assume that $C_{p}$ does not go through $q^{*}$. We can show that the complete linear system $\left|4 C_{0}-\pi^{*} D-C_{p}\right|$ contains a member of the form $\sum_{i=1}^{3} C_{p_{i}}, \quad\left(p_{i} \in C, i=1,2,3\right)$, and there exist points $p_{i} \in C(i=1,2,3)$ such that $\sum_{i=1}^{3} C_{p_{i}}$ does not go through $q^{\prime}$. Hence the complete linear system $\left|4 C_{0}-\mu^{*} D\right|$ separates $q$ and $q^{\prime}$.
q.e.d.

Proposition 4.20 Let $\pi: W \rightarrow C$ be the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle associated to the locally free sheaf $E \cong L \otimes\left(F_{2,1} \oplus \mathcal{O}_{C}\right),\left(L \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(1,1), F_{2,1} \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(2,1)\right)$, $T$ the tautological divisor with $\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \cong E$, and $D \in \operatorname{Div}(C)$ a divisor with $\mathcal{O}_{C}(D) \cong \operatorname{det} E$. Then a general member $S \in\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ is a canonical surface.

Proof By the proof of Theorem 4.11, we know that Bs $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|=\emptyset$ holds when $L \cong \operatorname{det} F_{2,1}$, and that $C_{1}:=\mathbf{P}\left(E / E_{0}\right) \subset W$ is the base locus of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ when $L \neq \operatorname{det} F_{2,1}$.

First, we consider the case $L \cong \operatorname{det} F_{2,1}$.
Since $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{|T|}=3$ by Lemma 4.17, we have $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}=1$, 2 or 3 . There is nothing to prove if $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}=1$.

Assume $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}=2$. Since $\operatorname{Bs}|T|$ consists of one point $q \in W$, a general member $S \in\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ does not contain $q$. Let $\phi: \bar{W} \rightarrow W$ be the blowing-up at $q$ and $\bar{T} \subset \bar{W}$ the proper transform of $T$ by $\phi$, and denote $\mathcal{E}:=\phi^{-1}(q)$. In this case, the proper transform $\bar{S}$ of $S$ is linearly equivalent to $4 \bar{T}+4 \mathcal{E}-\phi^{*} \pi^{*} D$. If $\phi^{\prime}: \bar{W} \rightarrow W^{\prime}$ is the
elementary transformation appearing in the proof of Lemma 4.17, then $S^{\prime}:=\phi^{\prime}(\bar{S})$ is linearly equivalent to $4 T^{\prime}+\pi^{\prime *}(4 p-D) \sim 4 T^{\prime}$, where $p \in C$ is the point with $\mathcal{O}_{C}(p) \cong L$. (In the rest of the proof, $p$ denots this point.) Since $S$ does not contain $q$, we may identify as $S=\bar{S}$, and $\Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}$ is factored as

$$
\Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}: S \rightarrow S^{\prime} \rightarrow \Phi_{\left|T^{\prime}\right|}\left(S^{\prime}\right)\left(\subset \mathbf{P}^{3}\right)
$$

Since $\left(4 T^{\prime}\right)\left(T^{\prime}\right)^{2}=12$ and $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}=2$, if $H \subset \mathbf{P}^{3}$ is a hyperplane, we have $\Phi_{\left|T^{\prime}\right|}\left(S^{\prime}\right) \sim$ $6 H$. Since $\Phi_{\left|T^{\prime}\right|}^{*} H \sim T^{\prime}$, we have $\Phi_{\left|T^{\prime}\right|}^{*}\left(\Phi_{\left|T^{\prime}\right|}\left(S^{\prime}\right)\right) \sim 6 T^{\prime}$, and there exists a relative hyperquadric surface $Q \in\left|2 T^{\prime}\right|$ with

$$
\Phi_{\left|T^{\prime}\right|}^{*}\left(\Phi_{\left|T^{\prime}\right|}\left(S^{\prime}\right)\right)=S^{\prime}+Q
$$

Since $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{\left|T^{\prime}\right|}=3$ and $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}=2$, we see that $Q$ is birationaly equivalent to $\Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}(S)$. On the other hand, $Q$ is birationaly equivalent to a ruled surface over $C$. Thus $S^{\prime}$ is birationaly equivalent to a double covering of a ruled surface over $C$. Hence $S^{\prime}$ has an irrational pencil whose general fiber is a rational curve, an elliptic curve or a hyperelliptic curve, which is absurd.

Assume $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}=3$. Denote $C_{1}:=\mathbf{P}\left(E / E_{0}\right)$, and let $q_{0} \in S^{\prime} \backslash C_{1}$ be a point such that $\Phi_{\left|T^{\prime}\right|}^{-1}\left(\Phi_{\left|T^{\prime}\right|}\left(q_{0}\right)\right)$ consists of three distinct points $q_{0}, q_{1}, q_{2}$. Since we can prove that the restriction of $\Phi_{\left|T^{\prime}\right|}$ to any fiber of $\pi$ is an isomorphism onto its image by the same proof as in Lemma $4.2, q_{1}, q_{2}, q_{3}$ are contained in distinct fibers of $\pi^{\prime}$. Let $C_{1} \subset W, \rho: X \rightarrow W, \sigma: X \rightarrow Y, \mu: Y \rightarrow C, T^{\prime}, C_{0}, Y_{1}, Y_{0}, Y_{\infty}, Z_{0}$ and $Z_{\infty}$ be as in Theorem 4.11. Since $Z_{0} \in H^{0}\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{X}\left(Y_{1}\right) \otimes \sigma^{*} \mu^{*} L^{-1}\right)$ and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& H^{0}\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{X}\left(Y_{1}\right) \otimes \sigma^{*} \mu^{*} L^{-1}\right) \cong H^{0}\left(Y,\left(\mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \oplus \mu^{*} L\right) \otimes \mu^{*} L^{-1}\right) \\
& \quad \cong H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}-\mu^{*} L\right) \oplus \mathcal{O}_{Y}\right) \cong H^{0}\left(C,\left(E_{0} \otimes L^{-1}\right) \oplus \mathcal{O}_{Y}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

this cohomology group is of dimension two. Since $q_{0} \notin C_{1}$, we may choose $Z_{0}$ in such a way that $Z_{0}\left(q_{0}\right)=0$ and that the divisor $\left(Z_{0}\right)$ is irreducible. The global section $\Psi \in H^{0}\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{X}\left(4 Y_{1}\right) \otimes \sigma^{*} \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$ defining the proper transform $\tilde{S}$ of $S$ by $\rho$ can be written as

$$
\begin{aligned}
\Psi= & \sum_{i=0}^{4} \psi_{i} Z_{0}^{4-i} Z_{\infty}^{i} \\
& \psi_{i} \in H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(i C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} L^{\otimes(4-i)} \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right),(i=0,1, \cdots, 4)
\end{aligned}
$$

Since the complete linear system $|T|$ does not separate $q_{0}, q_{1}$ and $q_{2}$, and since $Y_{1}(=$ $\left.\rho^{*} T\right) \sim\left(Z_{0}\right)+\phi^{-1}\left(\pi^{-1}(p)\right)$, we have $Z_{0}\left(q_{1}\right)=Z_{0}\left(q_{2}\right)=0$. Hence we have $\Psi\left(q_{i}\right)=$ $\psi_{4}\left(q_{i}\right) Z_{\infty}\left(q_{i}\right)^{4}$, and $q_{i}(i=1,2)$ is contained in $S^{\prime}$ if and only if $\psi_{4}\left(q_{i}\right)=0$. On the other hand, since $\psi_{4} \in H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(4 C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)$, we have $\psi_{4}\left(q_{i}\right) \neq 0$ for a general $S$ by Lemma 4.19, and we obtain a contradiction.

Next, we consider the case $L \not \approx \operatorname{det} F_{2,1}$.
Since $\operatorname{Bs}|T|$ consists of the intersection point of $C_{1}$ with $\pi^{-1}(p)$, if we denote $\phi$ : $\bar{W} \rightarrow W, \mathcal{E}, \bar{T}$ and $\bar{S}$ as above, we have

$$
\bar{S} \sim 4 \bar{T}+3 \mathcal{E}-\phi^{*} \pi^{*} D
$$

and

$$
S^{\prime} \sim 4 T^{\prime}-\pi^{*}\left(p^{\prime}\right)
$$

where $S^{\prime}=\phi^{\prime}(\bar{S}) \subset W^{\prime}$, and $p^{\prime} \in C$ is the point with $\mathcal{O}_{C}\left(p^{\prime}\right) \cong \operatorname{det} F_{2,1}$. Hence, the invertible sheaf $\mathcal{O}_{W^{\prime}}\left(4 T^{\prime}\right) \otimes \pi^{\prime *} \mathcal{O}_{C}\left(-p^{\prime}\right)$ on $W^{\prime}$ cannot be the pull-back of any invertible sheaf over $\mathbf{P}^{3}$, and we have $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|} \neq 3$.

We can prove that $\Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}$ does not give rise to a double covering onto its image as in the case $L \cong \operatorname{det} F_{2,1}$. Therefore, $S$ is canonical in this case, too.
q.e.d.

In the case $(e, d)=(2,2)$, we have the following:
Lemma 4.21 Let $E \cong E_{0} \oplus L$ be a locally free sheaf of rank 3 over an elliptic curve $C$ with $E_{0} \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(2,2)$ and $L \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(1,2)$. Furthermore, let $\pi: W \rightarrow C$ be the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle associated to $E$, and $T$ the tautological divisor with $\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \cong E$. Then the rational mapping $\Phi_{|T|}$ defined by the complete linear system $|T|$ has degree two.

In the notation of Lemma 4.21, there exists an invertible sheaf $L \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(1,1)$ with $E_{0} \cong L \otimes F_{2}$. Let $p_{0} \in C$ be the point with $L \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}\left(p_{0}\right), \mu: Y \rightarrow C$ the ruled surface assciated to $E_{0}$ and $C_{0}$ the section of $\mu$ with $\mu_{*} \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \cong E_{0}$. Since

$$
H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right) \otimes \mu^{*} L^{-1}\right) \cong H^{0}\left(C, E_{0} \otimes L^{-1}\right) \cong H^{0}\left(C, F_{2}\right) \cong \mathbf{C},
$$

there exists a unique section $C^{\prime}$ with $C^{\prime} \sim C_{0}-\Gamma_{0}$, where $\Gamma_{0}:=\mu^{-1}\left(p_{0}\right)$.
Proof Let $\rho: X \rightarrow W, \sigma: X \rightarrow Y, \mu: Y \rightarrow C, Y_{1}, Y_{0}, Y_{\infty}, Z_{0}$ and $Z_{\infty}$ be as above. Since $H^{0}\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{X}\left(Y_{1}\right)\right) \cong H^{0}(C, L) \oplus H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right)\right)$, any $Z \in H^{0}\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{X}\left(Y_{1}\right)\right)$ can be written as

$$
Z=\tilde{\psi}_{0} Z_{0}+\tilde{\psi}_{\infty} Z_{\infty}, \quad \tilde{\psi}_{0} \in H^{0}(C, L), \tilde{\psi}_{\infty} \in H^{0}\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\left(C_{0}\right)\right) .
$$

Let $y_{0} \in Y$ be as in Lemma 3.5. We have Bs $\left|Y_{1}\right|=\left\{q_{0}\right\}$ by Lemma 3.5 and by $\operatorname{deg} L=2$, where $q_{0}:=\sigma^{-1}\left(y_{0}\right) \cap Y_{0}$. If we identify $q_{0}$ with $\rho\left(q_{0}\right)$ and so that $q_{0} \in W$, then we have $\mathrm{Bs}|T|=\left\{q_{0}\right\}$. Again by Lemma 3.5, two different general members of $\left|C_{0}\right|$ intersect at $y_{0}$ with multiplicity 2 . Hence if we let $\zeta_{1}: W_{1} \rightarrow W$ be the blowing-up at $q_{0}$, and $T^{\prime}$ the proper transform of $T$, then the complete linear system $\left|T^{\prime}\right|$ has one base point $q_{0}^{\prime}$. If we let $\zeta_{2}: W_{2} \rightarrow W_{1}$ be the blowing-up at $q_{0}^{\prime}$, and $T^{\prime \prime}$ the proper transform of $T^{\prime}$, then we have $\operatorname{Bs}\left|T^{\prime \prime}\right|=\emptyset, \operatorname{dim}\left|T^{\prime \prime}\right|=\operatorname{dim}|T|=3$ and $\left(T^{\prime \prime}\right)^{3}=T^{3}-2=2$, and $\Phi_{\left|T^{\prime \prime}\right|}: Y_{1}^{\prime \prime} \rightarrow \mathbf{P}^{3}$ is the double covering.
q.e.d.

Proposition 4.22 Let $\pi: W \rightarrow C$ be the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle associated to the locally free sheaf $E \cong E_{0} \oplus L$ with $E_{0} \cong L_{0} \otimes F_{2}$ and $L \cong L_{0}^{\otimes 2}$ for some $L_{0} \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(1,1)$, $T$ the tautological divisor with $\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \cong E$, and $D \in \operatorname{Div}(C)$ the divisor with $\mathcal{O}_{C}(D) \cong \operatorname{det} E$. Then a general member $S \in\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ is a canonical surface.

Proof We use the notation in the proof of Lemma 4.21. Furthermore, we regard $Y_{0}$ to be a relative hyperplane of $W$ by identifying $\rho\left(Y_{0}\right)$ with $Y_{0}$.

The canonical mapping of the minimal resolution of singularities of a general member $S^{\prime} \in\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ has degree one or two by Lemma 4.21.

Since $\operatorname{Bs}\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|=C^{\prime}$ and since $S^{\prime}$ has a rational double point of type $A_{3}$ at $q_{0} \in C^{\prime}$ by the proof of Theorem 4.10, we have

$$
S_{1}^{\prime} \sim 4 T^{\prime}+2 \mathcal{E}_{1}-\zeta_{1}^{*} \pi^{*} D
$$

where $\mathcal{E}_{1}:=\zeta_{1}^{-1}\left(q_{0}\right)$ and $S_{1}^{\prime}$ is the proper transform of $S^{\prime}$ by $\zeta_{1}$. $S_{1}$ has a rational double point of type $A_{1}$. On the other hand, since the support of the intersection of $S^{\prime}$ with $Y_{0}$ is $C^{\prime}$, this rational double point does not coincide with $q_{0}^{\prime}$. Hence the proper transform $S_{2}^{\prime}$ of $S_{1}^{\prime}$ by $\zeta_{2}$ satisfies

$$
S_{2}^{\prime} \sim 4 T^{\prime \prime}+6 \mathcal{E}_{2}+2 \mathcal{E}_{1}^{\prime}-\zeta_{2}^{*} \zeta_{1}^{*} \pi^{*} D
$$

where $\mathcal{E}_{2}$ is the exceptional divisor of $\zeta_{2}$, and $\mathcal{E}_{1}^{\prime}$ is the proper transform of $\mathcal{E}_{1}$ by $\zeta_{2}$. Since $6 \mathcal{E}_{2}+2 \mathcal{E}_{1}^{\prime} \nsim \zeta_{2}^{*} \zeta_{1}^{*} \pi^{*} D, S_{2}^{\prime}$ cannot be the pull-back of any effective divisor of $\mathbf{P}^{3}$ by $\Phi_{\left|T^{\prime \prime}\right|}$. Therefore, $S$ is a canonical surface.
q.e.d.

## 4.3 $E$ is indecomposable

Let $E$ be an indecomposable locally free sheaf of rank 3 over an elliptic curve $C$. Denote $d:=\operatorname{deg} E$. We prove the following theorem in $\S \S 4.3 .1-4.3 .4$. We consider the case $d \not \equiv 0$ $(\bmod 3)$ and $d \neq 1,2$ in $\S 4.3 .1$, the case $d \equiv 0(\bmod 3)$ and $d \neq 3$ in $\S 4.3 .2$, the case $d=3$ in $\S 4.3 .3$, and the case $d=2$ in $\S 4.3 .4$. We omit the case $d=1$ because it was investigated by Catanese and Ciliberto [6]. In $\S 4.3 .5$, we study the canonical mapping of the surfaces obtained in $\S \S 4.3 .1-4.3 .4$. The results about the canonical mappings are stated in Corollaries 4.37 and 4.39, and Propositions 4.40 and 4.41.

We only have to consider the case $d>0$ by the remark immedietely before $\S 4.1$.
Theorem 4.23 Let $\pi: W:=\mathbf{P}(E) \rightarrow C$ be the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle associated to $E, T$ a tautological divisor with $\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \cong E$ and $D \in \operatorname{Div}(C)$ a divisor with $\mathcal{O}_{C}(D) \cong \operatorname{det} E$. The complete linear system $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ on $W$ satisfies the condition (A) if and only if $d \geq 1$.

Remark In this case, the complete linear system $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ turns out not to have base points except the case $d=3$, and hence its general member is irreducible and nonsingular by Bertini's theorem.

The restriction of $\mathcal{O}_{W}(4 T) \otimes \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}$ to a fiber $F$ of $\pi$ is isomorphic to $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{2}}(4)$. The complete linear system of $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{2}}(4)$ is base point free. Therefore to prove that the complete linear system of $\mathcal{O}_{W}(4 T) \otimes \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}$ is base point free, it suffices to show the following:

Lemma 4.24 In the notation of Theorem 4.23, if we assume $d \geq 4$, then the restriction mapping

$$
H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(4 T) \otimes \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right) \rightarrow H^{0}\left(F, \mathcal{O}_{F}(4 T)\right) \cong H^{0}\left(\mathbf{P}^{2}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{2}}(4)\right)
$$

is surjective for any fiber $F$ of $\pi$.

### 4.3.1 The proof when $\operatorname{deg} E \neq 1,2$ is not divisible by 3

Denote $d:=\operatorname{deg} E$. By Theorem 3.4, if we choose and fix an arbitrary isogeny $\varphi: \tilde{C} \rightarrow C$ of degree 3, there exists an invertible sheaf $L_{0}$ of degree $d$ over $\tilde{C}$ such that $\varphi_{*} L_{0} \cong E$. Furthermore, if we denote $G:=\operatorname{ker} \varphi=\{0, \sigma, 2 \sigma\}(\sigma \in G, \sigma \neq 0,3 \sigma=0)$ and $L_{1}:=T_{\sigma}^{*} L_{0}, L_{2}:=T_{2 \sigma}^{*} L_{0}$ where $T_{i \sigma}(i=1,2)$ is the translation by $i \sigma \in G$, then we have $\varphi^{*} E \cong L_{0} \oplus L_{1} \oplus L_{2}$. Denote $\tilde{E}:=\varphi^{*} E$.

Let $\pi: W:=\mathbf{P}(E) \rightarrow C$ and $\tilde{\pi}: \tilde{W}:=\mathbf{P}(\tilde{E}) \rightarrow \tilde{C}$ be the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundles associated to $E$ and $\tilde{E}$, respectively. Let $T$ and $\tilde{T}$ be tautological divisors on $W$ and $\tilde{W}$, respectively, such that $\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \cong E$ and $\tilde{\pi}_{*} \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{W}}(\tilde{T}) \cong \tilde{E}$. Consider the following diagram:


If we denote by $\Phi$ the morphism from $\tilde{W}$ to $W$ in the above diagram, and choose a divisor $\tilde{D} \in \operatorname{Div}(\tilde{C})$ such that $\mathcal{O}_{\tilde{C}}(\tilde{D}) \cong \operatorname{det} \tilde{E}$, then $\tilde{T} \sim \Phi^{*} T$ and hence $\Phi^{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}\left(4 T-\pi^{*} D\right) \cong$ $\mathcal{O}_{\tilde{W}}\left(4 \tilde{T}-\tilde{\pi}^{*} \tilde{D}\right)$.

We prove Theorem 4.23 in the case $d \geq 4$, i.e., Lemma 4.24. If $F$ is any fiber of $\pi$, and if we denote $\mathcal{L}=\mathcal{O}_{W}(4 T-F) \otimes \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}$, then it suffices to show that $H^{1}(W, \mathcal{L})=0$ holds.

The kernel ker $\varphi^{*}$ of the isogeny $\varphi^{*}: \operatorname{Pic}^{0}(C) \rightarrow \operatorname{Pic}^{0}(\tilde{C})$ corresponding to $\varphi: \tilde{C} \rightarrow C$ is of the form $\left\{\mathcal{O}_{C}, \mathcal{M}, \mathcal{M}^{\otimes 2}\right\}$ with $\mathcal{M} \not \approx \mathcal{O}_{C}, \mathcal{M}^{\otimes 3} \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}$.

Lemma 4.25 In the above notation, we have

$$
\varphi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{C}} \cong \mathcal{O}_{C} \oplus \mathcal{M} \oplus \mathcal{M}^{\otimes 2}
$$

Proof The exact sequence $0 \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{C} \rightarrow \phi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{C}}$ of sheaves splits by the homomorphism $(1 / 3) \operatorname{tr}: \phi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{C}} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{C}$, where $\operatorname{tr}$ is the trace mapping. Hence there exists a locally free sheaf $\mathcal{E}$ of rank 2 over $C$ with $\phi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{C}} \cong \mathcal{O}_{C} \oplus \mathcal{E}$. On the other hand, since $\mathcal{M} \otimes \phi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{C}} \cong$ $\phi_{*}\left(\mathcal{O}_{\tilde{C}} \otimes \phi^{*} \mathcal{M}\right) \cong \phi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{C}}$ holds by the projection formula, we have $\mathcal{M} \oplus(\mathcal{M} \otimes \mathcal{E}) \cong$ $\mathcal{O}_{C} \oplus \mathcal{E}$. Similarly, since $\mathcal{M}^{\otimes 2} \otimes \phi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{C}} \cong \phi_{*}\left(\mathcal{O}_{\tilde{C}} \otimes \phi^{*} \mathcal{M}^{\otimes 2}\right) \cong \phi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{C}}$ holds, we have $\mathcal{M}^{\otimes 2} \oplus\left(\mathcal{M}^{\otimes 2} \otimes \mathcal{E}\right) \cong \mathcal{O}_{C} \oplus \mathcal{E}$. Hence we have $\mathcal{E} \cong \mathcal{M} \oplus \mathcal{M}^{\otimes 2}$ by Krull-Schmidt's theorem (cf. [4]).
q.e.d.

Remark In the proof of Lemma 4.25, we do not use the condition $d \geq 4$. Namely, this lemma also holds in the case $d \leq 2$ and $d \not \equiv 0(\bmod 3)$.

By Lemma 4.25, we get

$$
H^{1}\left(\tilde{W}, \Phi^{*} \mathcal{L}\right) \cong H^{1}(W, \mathcal{L}) \oplus H^{1}(W, \mathcal{L} \otimes \mathcal{M}) \oplus H^{1}\left(W, \mathcal{L} \otimes \mathcal{M}^{\otimes 2}\right)
$$

Since the action of $G$ on $\tilde{W}$ is fixed point free, we have $H^{1}(W, \mathcal{L})=H^{1}\left(\tilde{W}, \Phi^{*} \mathcal{L}\right)^{G}($ cf., e.g., $[9$, p. 202, Corollaire $])$. On the other hand, if $\tilde{F}_{0}, \tilde{F}_{1}, \tilde{F}_{2}$ are the fibers of $\tilde{\pi}$ which are in the inverse image of $F$ by $\Phi$, then $\Phi^{*} \mathcal{L} \cong \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{W}}\left(4 \tilde{T}-\tilde{F}_{0}-\tilde{F}_{1}-\tilde{F}_{2}\right) \otimes \tilde{\pi}^{*} \operatorname{det} \tilde{E}^{\vee}$ holds. Hence if we denote $q_{i}:=\tilde{\pi}\left(\tilde{F}_{i}\right)(i=0,1,2)$, then we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
& H^{1}\left(\tilde{W}, \Phi^{*} \mathcal{L}\right) \cong H^{1}\left(\tilde{C}, S^{4} \tilde{E} \otimes \tilde{\pi}^{*}\left(\operatorname{det} \tilde{E}^{\vee} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{C}}\left(-q_{0}-q_{1}-q_{2}\right)\right)\right) \\
& \quad \cong \bigoplus_{\substack{\alpha, \beta, \gamma \geq 0 \\
\alpha+\beta+\gamma=4}} H^{1}\left(\tilde{C}, L_{0}^{\otimes(\alpha-1)} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes(\beta-1)} \otimes L_{2}^{\otimes(\gamma-1)} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{C}}\left(-q_{0}-q_{1}-q_{2}\right)\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $d \geq 4$ by our assumption, this cohomology group is equal to 0 , and Theorem 4.23 in the case $d \geq 4$ is proved.
q.e.d.

### 4.3.2 The proof when $\operatorname{deg} E \neq 3$ is divisible by 3

If we denote $d_{0}=d / 3$, there exists an invertible sheaf $L$ of degree $d_{0}$ such that $E \cong L \otimes F_{3}$.
First we prove Theorem 4.23 in the case $d \geq 6$, i.e., Lemma 4.24. If we let $p:=\pi(F)$, then we have $H^{1}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(4 T-F) \otimes \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right) \cong H^{1}\left(C, S^{4} E \otimes \operatorname{det} E^{\vee} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}(-p)\right) \cong$ $H^{1}\left(C, S^{4} F_{3} \otimes L \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}(-p)\right)$. On the other hand, since $F_{3} \cong S^{2}\left(F_{2}\right)$ by Atiyah [4, Theorem 9], we have an isomorphism,

$$
S^{4}\left(F_{3}\right) \cong S^{4}\left(S^{2}\left(F_{2}\right)\right) \cong F_{9} \oplus F_{5} \oplus \mathcal{O}_{C}
$$

by [8, p. 156]. Therefore we have an isomorphism

$$
\begin{aligned}
& H^{1}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(4 T-F) \otimes \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right) \\
& \cong H^{1}\left(C, F_{9} \otimes L \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}(-p)\right) \oplus H^{1}\left(C, F_{5} \otimes L \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}(-p)\right) \oplus H^{1}\left(C, L \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}(-p)\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $\operatorname{deg}\left(F_{i} \otimes L \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}(-p)\right)=i\left(d_{0}-1\right)>0$ for $i=1,5,9\left(\right.$ with $\left.F_{1}=\mathcal{O}_{C}\right)$, these summands are all 0 if $d_{0} \geq 2$. Hence we have

$$
H^{1}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(4 T-F) \otimes \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}\right)=0
$$

if $d_{0} \geq 2$.
q.e.d.

### 4.3.3 The proof when $\operatorname{deg} E=3$ holds

Let $E$ be a locally free sheaf of rank 3 and degree 3 over an elliptic curve $C$. There exists an invertible sheaf $L \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(1,1)$ with $E \cong L \otimes F_{3}$. Let $p_{0} \in C$ be a point satisfying $L \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}\left(p_{0}\right)$.

Let $\pi: W \rightarrow C$ be the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle associated to $E$ and $T$ the tautological divisor with $\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \cong E$.

Lemma 4.26 $\mathrm{Bs}|T|$ consists of one point.
Proof Let $F$ be a fiber of $\pi$ over a point $p \in C \backslash\left\{p_{0}\right\}$. Since

$$
H^{1}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T-F)\right) \cong H^{1}\left(C, E \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}(-p)\right) \cong H^{1}\left(C, F_{3} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}\left(p_{0}-p\right)\right)=0
$$

the following restriction mapping is surjective:

$$
H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T)\right) \longrightarrow H^{0}\left(F, \mathcal{O}_{F}(T)\right)\left(\cong H^{0}\left(\mathbf{P}^{2}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{2}}(1)\right)\right)
$$

Hence there is no base point on $F$.
Denote $F_{0}:=\pi^{-1}\left(p_{0}\right)$. Since

$$
H^{1}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}\left(T-F_{0}\right)\right) \cong H^{1}\left(C, E \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}\left(-p_{0}\right)\right) \cong H^{1}\left(C, F_{3}\right) \cong \mathbf{C}
$$

and

$$
H^{1}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T)\right) \cong H^{1}(C, E)=0
$$

the image of the following restriction mapping is two-dimensional:

$$
H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T)\right) \longrightarrow H^{0}\left(F_{0}, \mathcal{O}_{F_{0}}(T)\right)\left(\cong H^{0}\left(\mathbf{P}^{2}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{2}}(1)\right)\right)
$$

q.e.d.

Let $F_{0}$ be as in the proof of Lemma 4.26. Since we have $\operatorname{det} E \cong \mathcal{O}_{W}\left(3 p_{0}\right)$, we have to consider the complete linear system $\left|4 T-3 F_{0}\right|$.

Since

$$
H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \otimes \pi^{*} L^{-1}\right) \cong H^{0}\left(C, E \otimes L^{-1}\right) \cong H^{0}\left(C, F_{3}\right) \cong \mathbf{C}
$$

there exists a unique relative hyperplane $T_{0}$ with $T_{0} \sim T-F_{0}$.
Lemma 4.27 $T_{0}$ is isomorphic to the ruled surface $\mathbf{P}\left(F_{2}\right)$. Furthermore, if $C_{0} \subset T_{0}$ is a section of $\mu:=\pi_{\mid T_{0}}: T_{0} \rightarrow C$ with $\mu_{*} \mathcal{O}_{T_{0}}\left(C_{0}\right) \cong F_{2}$, then we have $N_{T_{0} / W} \cong \mathcal{O}_{T_{0}}\left(C_{0}\right)$, where $N_{T_{0} / W}$ is a normal bundle of $T_{0}$ in $W$.

Proof Since $T_{0}^{3}=0, N_{T_{0} / W}$ is isomorphic to $\mathcal{O}_{T_{0}}$ or an invertible sheaf induced from a nonzero divisor on $T_{0}$ with self-intersection number zero.

If $N_{T_{0} / W} \cong \mathcal{O}_{W}$ holds, since we have $\operatorname{Pic}(W) \cong \mathbf{Z} \cdot T_{0} \oplus \pi^{*} \operatorname{Pic}(C)$, the restriction of any divisor $Z$ on $W$ to $T_{0}$ consists of fibers of $\mu$. Hence we must have $Z^{2} T_{0}=0$. On the other hand, we have $T^{2} T_{0}=T^{2}\left(T-F_{0}\right)=T^{3}-T^{2} F_{0}=3-1=2 \neq 0$, which contradicts $Z^{2} T_{0}=0$.

Since we have $T_{0}^{2} F=1$ for any fiber $F$ of $\pi$, if $C^{\prime} \subset T_{0}$ is some section of $\mu$, then there exists a divisor $\delta$ on $C$ with $N_{T_{0} / W} \cong \mathcal{O}_{T_{0}}\left(C^{\prime}+\mu^{*} \delta\right)$. On the other hand, we have

$$
\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(T_{0}, N_{T_{0} / W}\right)=\operatorname{dim} H^{1}\left(T_{0}, N_{T_{0} / W}\right)=0,1,
$$

by the cohomology long exact sequence induced from the exact sequence of sheaves $0 \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{W} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{W}\left(T_{0}\right) \rightarrow N_{T_{0} / W} \rightarrow 0$. The pairs of a ruled suface and a divisor on it satisfying the above conditions are as follows:
(1) $T_{0}=\mathbf{P}\left(\mathcal{O}_{C} \oplus L\right)$ with $L \in \operatorname{Pic}^{0}(C) \backslash\left\{\mathcal{O}_{C}\right\}$, and $C_{0}+\mu^{*} \delta$ with $\mu_{*} \mathcal{O}_{T_{0}}\left(C_{0}\right) \cong \mathcal{O}_{C} \oplus L$ and $\operatorname{deg} \delta=0$,
(2) $T_{0}=\mathbf{P}\left(F_{2}\right)$ and $C_{0}+\mu^{*} \delta$ with $\mu_{*} \mathcal{O}_{T_{0}}\left(C_{0}\right) \cong F_{2}$ and $\operatorname{deg} \delta=0$,
where $C_{0}$ is a section of $\mu$.
Assume (1) holds. Let $\delta_{0} \in \operatorname{Div}(C)$ be a divisor with $L \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}\left(\delta_{0}\right)$.
Since $N_{T_{0} / W} \cong \mathcal{O}_{T_{0}}\left(T_{0}\right) \cong \mathcal{O}_{T_{0}}\left(C_{0}+\mu^{*} \delta\right)$, if we let $p_{0}^{\prime} \in C$ be a point with $p_{0}^{\prime} \sim p_{0}+\delta$, then we have $\mathcal{O}_{T_{0}}(T) \cong \mathcal{O}_{T_{0}}\left(C_{0}+\mu^{*} p_{0}^{\prime}\right)$. Since

$$
\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(T_{0}, \mathcal{O}_{T_{0}}\left(C_{0}+\mu^{*} p_{0}^{\prime}\right)\right)=\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(C,\left(\mathcal{O}_{C} \oplus L\right) \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}\left(p_{0}\right)\right)=2
$$

and since $\left(C_{0}+\mu^{*} p_{0}^{\prime}\right)^{2}=2$, the complete linear system $\left|C_{0}+\mu^{*} p_{0}^{\prime}\right|$ has one or two isolated base points. If we let $p_{0}^{\prime \prime} \in C$ be a point with $p_{0}^{\prime \prime} \sim p_{0}^{\prime}+\delta_{0}$, then we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& H^{0}\left(T_{0}, \mathcal{O}_{T_{0}}\left(C_{0}+\mu^{*}\left(p_{0}^{\prime}-p_{0}^{\prime \prime}\right)\right)\right) \cong H^{0}\left(C,\left(\mathcal{O}_{C} \oplus L\right) \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}\left(p_{0}^{\prime}-p_{0}^{\prime \prime}\right)\right) \\
& \quad \cong H^{0}\left(C, \mathcal{O}_{C}\left(p_{0}^{\prime}-p_{0}^{\prime \prime}\right)\right) \oplus H^{0}\left(C, L \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}\left(p_{0}^{\prime}-p_{0}^{\prime \prime}\right)\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

and this cohomology group is one-dimensional since $L \not \approx \mathcal{O}_{C}$. Hence there exists a section $C_{0}^{\prime} \subset T_{0}$ of $\mu$ with

$$
C_{0}^{\prime} \sim C_{0}+\mu^{*}\left(p_{0}^{\prime}-p_{0}^{\prime \prime}\right)
$$

Since $\delta_{0} \neq 0$, we have $p_{0}^{\prime} \neq p_{0}^{\prime \prime}$ and $C_{0} \neq C_{0}^{\prime}$. Hence, $C_{0}+\mu^{*} p_{0}^{\prime}$ and $C_{0}^{\prime}+\mu^{*} p_{0}^{\prime \prime}$ are mutually distinct members of $\left|C_{0}+\mu^{*} p_{0}^{\prime}\right|$. Since $C_{0} C_{0}^{\prime}=0$, the intersection points of these two divisor are two distinct points $C_{0} \cap \mu^{*} p_{0}^{\prime \prime}$ and $C_{0} \cap \mu^{*} p_{0}^{\prime}$, which are the base points of $\left|C_{0}+\mu^{*} p_{0}^{\prime}\right|$, a contradiction to Lemma 4.26. Therefore we have $T_{0} \cong \mathbf{P}\left(F_{2}\right)$.

We only have to show that $\delta=0$ in the notation of (2). Asumme $\delta \neq 0$. There exists a point $p_{1} \in C$ with

$$
T_{\mid T_{0}} \sim\left(T_{0}+F_{0}\right)_{\mid T_{0}} \sim C_{0}+\mu^{*}\left(\delta+p_{0}\right) \sim C_{0}+\mu^{*} p_{1}
$$

We can prove that the complete linar system of $T_{\mid T_{0}}$ on $T_{0}$ has one base point on $\mu^{-1}\left(p_{1}\right)$ and no other base points in the same way as in the proof of Lemma 3.5, a contradiction to the fact that the base point of $|T|$ is in the fiber of $\pi$ over $p_{0}$ since we have $p_{0} \neq p_{1}$. Hence we have $\delta=0$ and $N_{T_{0} / W} \cong \mathcal{O}_{T_{0}}\left(C_{0}\right)$. q.e.d.

In the notation of the proof of Lemma 4.27, since $T_{\mid T_{0}} \sim C_{0}+\Gamma_{0}$, we have $\mathrm{Bs}|T|=$ $\left\{q_{0}\right\}$, where $q_{0}:=C_{0} \cap \Gamma_{0}$ by Lemma 3.5.

Lemma 4.28 Bs $\left|4 T-3 F_{0}\right|=\left\{q_{0}\right\}$ holds.

To prove this lemma, we need the following lemma:
Lemma 4.29 The restriction mapping

$$
H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}\left(4 T_{0}+F_{0}\right)\right) \longrightarrow H^{0}\left(T_{0}, \mathcal{O}_{T_{0}}\left(4 C_{0}+\Gamma_{0}\right)\right)
$$

is surjective.
Proof We only have to prove $H^{1}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}\left(3 T_{0}+F_{0}\right)\right)=0$ in the view of the cohomology long exact sequence induced from the exact sequence of sheaves

$$
0 \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{W}\left(3 T_{0}+F_{0}\right) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{W}\left(4 T_{0}+F_{0}\right) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{T_{0}}\left(4 C_{0}+\Gamma_{0}\right) \rightarrow 0
$$

Since $S^{3} F_{3} \cong S^{3}\left(S^{2} F_{2}\right) \cong F_{3} \oplus F_{7}$ (cf. [4, Theorem 9], [8, p.156]), we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& H^{1}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}\left(3 T_{0}+F_{0}\right)\right) \cong H^{1}\left(C,\left(S^{3} F_{3}\right) \otimes L\right) \\
& \quad \cong H^{1}\left(C, F_{3} \otimes L\right) \oplus H^{1}\left(C, F_{7} \otimes L\right)=0
\end{aligned}
$$

q.e.d.

Proof of Lemma 4.28 We can show that there is no base point of $\left|4 T-3 F_{0}\right|$ on any fiber except $F_{0}$ in the same way as in the proof of Lemma 4.26. Furthermore, the base points of $\left|4 T-3 F_{0}\right|$ exist only on the line $T_{0} \cap F_{0} \cong \mathbf{P}^{1}$, since $3 T_{0}+T \in\left|4 T-3 F_{0}\right|$.

Since $4 T-3 F_{0} \sim 4 T_{0}+F_{0}$, we have $\mathcal{O}_{W}\left(4 T-3 F_{0}\right) \otimes \mathcal{O}_{W} \mathcal{O}_{T_{0}} \cong \mathcal{O}_{T_{0}}\left(4 C_{0}+\Gamma_{0}\right)$. On the other hand, since the restriction mapping

$$
H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}\left(4 T-3 F_{0}\right)\right) \longrightarrow H^{0}\left(T_{0}, \mathcal{O}_{T_{0}}\left(4 C_{0}+\Gamma_{0}\right)\right)
$$

is surjective by Lemma $4.29, q_{0}$ is the only base point of $\left|4 T-3 F_{0}\right|$ by Lemma 3.5. q.e.d.
The restriction of a general member $S$ of $\left|4 T-3 F_{0}\right|$ to $T_{0}$ is nonsingular by Lemmas 3.5 and 4.29. Hence $S$ is nonsingular.

### 4.3.4 The proof when $\operatorname{deg} E=2$ holds

We fix an isogeny $\varphi: \tilde{C} \rightarrow C$ of degree 3 as in $\S 4.3 .1$. We let $L_{i}(i=0,1,2), \tilde{E}, \tilde{\pi}$ : $\tilde{W} \rightarrow \tilde{C}, \tilde{T}, \Phi: \tilde{W} \rightarrow W, D \in \operatorname{Div}(C)$ and $\tilde{D} \in \operatorname{Div}(\tilde{C})$ be as in §4.3.1.

Denote $\mathcal{U}:=\left\{\Phi^{*} S \in\left|4 \tilde{T}-\tilde{\pi}^{*} \tilde{D}\right||S \in| 4 T-\pi^{*} D \mid\right\}$.
$G:=\operatorname{ker} \varphi=\{0, \sigma, 2 \sigma\}$ acts on $H^{0}\left(\tilde{W}, \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{W}}(4 \tilde{T}) \otimes \tilde{\pi}^{*} \operatorname{det} \tilde{E}^{\vee}\right)$ by $\left\{\mathrm{id}, T_{\sigma}^{*}, T_{2 \sigma}^{*}\right\}$. Let $H^{0}\left(\tilde{W}, \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{W}}(4 \tilde{T}) \otimes \tilde{\pi}^{*} \operatorname{det} \tilde{E}^{\vee}\right)^{G}$ be the subspace which consists of all the members which are invariant under this action.

Lemma 4.30 Let $(\Psi)$ be the divisor defined by $\Psi \in H^{0}\left(\tilde{W}, \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{W}}(4 \tilde{T}) \otimes \tilde{\pi}^{*} \operatorname{det} \tilde{E}^{\vee}\right)$. Then we have

$$
\mathcal{U}=\left\{(\Psi) \mid \Psi \in H^{0}\left(\tilde{W}, \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{W}}(4 \tilde{T}) \otimes \tilde{\pi}^{*} \operatorname{det} \tilde{E}^{\vee}\right)^{G}\right\}
$$

Proof Since we have $\Phi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{W}} \cong \pi^{*} \varphi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{C}}$ by the base change theorem (cf., e.g., Mumford [16]), if we denote $\mathcal{L}:=\mathcal{O}_{W}(4 T) \otimes \pi^{*} \operatorname{det} E^{\vee}$, then we obtain isomorphisms

$$
\begin{aligned}
& H^{0}\left(\tilde{W}, \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{W}}(4 \tilde{T}) \otimes \tilde{\pi}^{*} \operatorname{det} \tilde{E}^{\vee}\right)=H^{0}\left(\tilde{W}, \Phi^{*} \mathcal{L}\right) \cong H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{L} \otimes \Phi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{W}}\right) \\
& \quad \cong H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{L} \otimes \pi^{*} \varphi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{C}}\right) \cong H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{L} \otimes \pi^{*}\left(\mathcal{O}_{C} \oplus \mathcal{M} \oplus \mathcal{M}^{\otimes 2}\right)\right) \\
& \quad \cong H^{0}(W, \mathcal{L}) \oplus H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{L} \otimes \pi^{*} \mathcal{M}\right) \oplus H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{L} \otimes \pi^{*} \mathcal{M}^{\otimes 2}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

All the elements of the subspaces corresponding to $H^{0}(W, \mathcal{L}), H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{L} \otimes \pi^{*} \mathcal{M}\right)$ and $H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{L} \otimes \pi^{*} \mathcal{M}^{\otimes 2}\right)$ are $G$-semi-invariant, and hence these subspaces correspond to the eigenspaces of the isomorphism $T_{\sigma}^{*}$ on $H^{0}\left(\tilde{W}, \Phi^{*} \mathcal{L}\right)$. The eigenspace $H^{0}\left(\tilde{W}, \Phi^{*} \mathcal{L}\right)^{G}$ for the eigenvalue 1 corresponds to $H^{0}(W, \mathcal{L})$, and is the image of the injection $H^{0}(W, \mathcal{L}) \hookrightarrow$ $H^{0}\left(\tilde{W}, \Phi^{*} \mathcal{L}\right)$.
q.e.d.

We investigate the base locus $\operatorname{Bs} \mathcal{U}$ of $\mathcal{U}$. To do so, we describe the action of $G$ on $H^{0}\left(\tilde{W}, \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{W}}(4 \tilde{T}) \otimes \tilde{\pi}^{*} \operatorname{det} \tilde{E}^{\vee}\right)$.

We choose and fix $0 \neq X_{i} \in H^{0}\left(\tilde{W}, \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{W}}(\tilde{T}) \otimes \tilde{\pi}^{*} L_{i}^{-1}\right)=H^{0}\left(\tilde{C}, \quad \tilde{E} \otimes L_{i}^{-1}\right) \cong$ $H^{0}\left(\tilde{C}, L_{0} \otimes L_{i}^{-1}\right) \oplus H^{0}\left(\tilde{C}, L_{1} \otimes L_{i}^{-1}\right) \oplus H^{0}\left(\tilde{C}, L_{2} \otimes L_{i}^{-1}\right) \cong \mathbf{C}(i=0,1,2)$ such that $X_{1}=T_{\sigma}^{*} X_{0}$ and $X_{2}=T_{2 \sigma}^{*} X_{0}$ hold. Then any $\Psi \in H^{0}\left(\tilde{W}, \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{W}}(4 \tilde{T}) \otimes \tilde{\pi}^{*} \operatorname{det} \tilde{E}^{\vee}\right)$ can be written as

$$
\Psi=\sum_{\substack{\alpha, \beta, \gamma \geq 0 \\ \alpha+\beta+\gamma=4}} \psi_{\alpha \beta \gamma} X_{0}^{\alpha} X_{1}^{\beta} X_{2}^{\gamma}, \quad \psi_{\alpha \beta \gamma} \in H^{0}\left(\tilde{C}, L_{0}^{\otimes(\alpha-1)} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes(\beta-1)} \otimes L_{2}^{\otimes(\gamma-1)}\right)
$$

Since we have

$$
T_{\sigma}^{*} \Psi=\sum_{\substack{\alpha, \beta, \gamma \geq 0 \\ \alpha+\beta+\gamma=4}}\left(T_{\sigma}^{*} \psi_{\alpha \beta \gamma}\right) X_{1}^{\alpha} X_{2}^{\beta} X_{0}^{\gamma}
$$

we get $\Psi \in H^{0}\left(\tilde{W}, \quad(4 \tilde{T}) \otimes \tilde{\pi}^{*} \operatorname{det} \tilde{E}^{\vee}\right)^{G}$ if and only if $T_{\sigma}^{*} \psi_{\alpha \beta \gamma}=\psi_{\gamma \alpha \beta}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma \geq$ $0, \alpha+\beta+\gamma=4)$.

Let $\Lambda: \tilde{C} \rightarrow \operatorname{Pic}^{0}(\tilde{C})$ be defined by $\Lambda(y):=T_{y}^{*} L_{0} \otimes L_{0}^{-1}$ for $y \in C$ where $T_{y}$ is the translation by $y$ on $\tilde{C}$. Then it is a group homomorphism by the theorem of square [16]. Since we have $L_{1}=\mathrm{Ł}_{0} \otimes \Lambda(\sigma), L_{2}=L_{0} \otimes \Lambda(2 \sigma)$ and $\Lambda(3 \sigma)=\Lambda(0)=\mathcal{O}_{\tilde{C}}$, we have isomorphisms

$$
\begin{aligned}
& L_{0}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \otimes L_{2}^{-1} \cong L_{0} \cong L_{1}^{\otimes 2} \otimes L_{2}^{-1} \cong L_{1}^{-1} \otimes L_{2}^{\otimes 2} \cong L_{0}^{-1} \otimes L_{1} \otimes L_{2} \\
& L_{0}^{-1} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 3} \otimes L_{2}^{-1} \cong L_{1} \cong L_{0}^{-1} \otimes L_{2}^{\otimes 2} \cong L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \otimes L_{2}^{-1} \cong L_{0} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \otimes L_{2} \\
& L_{0}^{-1} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \otimes L_{2}^{\otimes 3} \cong L_{2} \cong L_{0}^{\otimes 2} \otimes L_{1}^{-1} \cong L_{0}^{-1} \otimes L_{1}^{\otimes 2} \cong L_{0} \otimes L_{1} \otimes L_{2}^{-1} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \psi_{400}, \psi_{211}, \psi_{130}, \psi_{103}, \psi_{022} \in H^{0}\left(\tilde{C}, L_{0}\right) \\
& \psi_{040}, \psi_{121}, \psi_{013}, \psi_{310}, \psi_{202} \in H^{0}\left(\tilde{C}, L_{1}\right) \\
& \psi_{004}, \psi_{112}, \psi_{301}, \psi_{031}, \psi_{220} \in H^{0}\left(\tilde{C}, L_{2}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Since we assume $d=2$, we have $\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(\tilde{C}, L_{i}\right)=2(i=0,1,2)$ by the Riemann-Roch theorem, the Serre duality and $\mathcal{O}_{\tilde{C}}\left(K_{\tilde{C}}\right) \cong \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{C}}$.

Let $\left\{s_{1}, s_{2}\right\} \subset H^{0}\left(\tilde{C}, L_{0}\right)$ be a basis as a C-vector space, and denote $t_{j}:=T_{\sigma}^{*} s_{j} \in$ $H^{0}\left(\tilde{C}, L_{1}\right), u_{j}:=T_{2 \sigma}^{*} s_{j} \in H^{0}\left(\tilde{C}, L_{2}\right)(j=1,2)$. Then we can choose a basis of $H^{0}\left(\tilde{W}, \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{W}}(4 \tilde{T}) \otimes \tilde{\pi}^{*} \operatorname{det} \tilde{E}\right)^{G}$ consisting of the following ten elements

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \Psi_{1 j}:=s_{j} X_{0}^{4}+t_{j} X_{1}^{4}+u_{j} X_{2}^{4} \\
& \Psi_{2 j}:=s_{j} X_{0}^{2} X_{1} X_{2}+t_{j} X_{0} X_{1}^{2} X_{2}+u_{j} X_{0} X_{1} X_{2}^{2} \\
& \Psi_{3 j}:=s_{j} X_{0} X_{1}^{3}+t_{j} X_{1} X_{2}^{3}+u_{j} X_{0}^{3} X_{2} \\
& \Psi_{4 j}:=s_{j} X_{0} X_{2}^{3}+t_{j} X_{0}^{3} X_{1}+u_{j} X_{1}^{3} X_{2} \\
& \Psi_{5 j}:=s_{j} X_{1}^{2} X_{2}^{2}+t_{j} X_{0}^{1} X_{2}^{2}+u_{j} X_{0}^{2} X_{1}^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

for $j=1,2$.
Lemma 4.31 We can choose the basis $\left\{s_{1}, s_{2}\right\}$ of $H^{0}\left(\tilde{C}, L_{0}\right)$ so that $s_{j}(p) t_{j}(p) u_{j}(p) \neq$ 0 holds for any $p \in \tilde{C}$ and for at least one of $j=1,2$. Furthermore, we have $s_{j}(p) s_{j}\left(p^{\prime}\right) s_{j}\left(p^{\prime \prime}\right) \neq 0$, where $p^{\prime}:=T_{\sigma}(p)$ and $p^{\prime \prime}:=T_{2 \sigma}(p)$.

Proof To avoid confusion in this proof, we denote by $(q)$ the divisor on $\tilde{C}$ determined by $q \in \tilde{C}$. Let $\left(q_{1}^{\prime}\right)+\left(q_{2}^{\prime}\right)$ be the divisor defined by a global section $s \in H^{0}\left(\tilde{C}, L_{0}\right)$, and $p_{1} \in \tilde{C}$ a point satisfying $2 p_{1}=q_{1}^{\prime}+q_{2}^{\prime}$ with respect to the group addition. Then we have $L_{0} \cong \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{C}}\left(2\left(p_{1}\right)\right)$ by Abel's theorem. Since we assume $\operatorname{deg} L_{0}=2$, there exists a point $p_{2} \in \tilde{C} \backslash\left\{p_{1}\right\}$ with $L_{0} \cong \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{C}}\left(2\left(p_{1}\right)\right) \cong \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{C}}\left(2\left(p_{2}\right)\right)$. If we denote $p_{i}^{\prime}:=T_{-\sigma}\left(p_{i}\right)$ and $p_{i}^{\prime \prime}:=T_{-2 \sigma}\left(p_{i}\right)(i=1,2)$, we have $\left\{p_{1}, p_{1}^{\prime}, p_{1}^{\prime \prime}\right\} \cap\left\{p_{2}, p_{2}^{\prime}, p_{2}^{\prime \prime}\right\}=\emptyset$. Indeed, since $p_{1}^{\prime}=p_{1}-\sigma$ holds (where - is the group subtraction on $\tilde{C}$ ), if $p_{1}^{\prime}=p_{2}$ holds, then we obtain $2 p_{2}=2 p_{1}-2 \sigma$ by doubling both sides of the equality. On the other hand, since $2 p_{1}=2 p_{2}$ holds by Abel's theorem, we obtain $2 \sigma=0$ and this contradicts the definition of $\sigma$. We can obtain the same results in the other cases.

Let $s_{1}, s_{2} \in H^{0}\left(\tilde{C}, L_{0}\right)$ be the global sections defining the divisors $2\left(p_{1}\right), 2\left(p_{2}\right)$ respectively, and denote $t_{j}:=T_{\sigma}^{*} s_{j}$, and $u_{j}:=T_{2 \sigma}^{*} s_{j}(j=1,2)$. Then since we have $\operatorname{supp}\left(s_{j}\right)=\left\{p_{j}\right\}, \operatorname{supp}\left(t_{j}\right)=\left\{p_{j}^{\prime}\right\}$ and $\operatorname{supp}\left(u_{j}\right)=\left\{p_{j}^{\prime \prime}\right\}(j=1,2)$, if we choose $\left\{s_{1}, s_{2}\right\}$ as a basis of $H^{0}\left(\tilde{C}, L_{0}\right)$, then one of $s_{1}$ and $s_{2}$ satisfies the condition of the lemma for any point except $p_{1}, p_{2}$. Moreover, $s_{2}$ satisfies the condition of the lemma for $p_{1}$ while $s_{1}$ satisfies the condition of the lemma for $p_{2}$. q.e.d.

We choose a basis $\left\{s_{1}, s_{2}\right\} \subset H^{0}\left(\tilde{C}, L_{0}\right)$ satisfying the condition of Lemme 4.31, fix an arbitrary point $p \in \tilde{C}$, and denote $p^{\prime}:=T_{\sigma}(p)$ and $T_{2 \sigma}(p)$. We assume that $j \in\{1,2\}$ satisfies $s_{j}(p) s_{j}\left(p^{\prime}\right) s_{j}\left(p^{\prime \prime}\right) \neq 0$. Let us restrict $\Psi_{i j}(i=1, \cdots, 5, j=1,2)$ to a fiber of $\tilde{\pi}$ over $p$, and investigate whether they have common solutions on the fiber. Note that $\Psi_{2 j}$ can be decomposed into the product of four linear forms as $\Psi_{2 j}=$ $X_{0} X_{1} X_{2}\left(s_{j} X_{0}+t_{j} X_{1}+u_{j} X_{2}\right)$. We consider the condition so that each of these linear forms and other $\Psi_{i j}$ have common solutions.

Lemma 4.32 If we fix $j \in\{1,2\}$ satisfying $s_{j}(p) s_{j}\left(p^{\prime}\right) s_{j}\left(p^{\prime \prime}\right) \neq 0$, then $X_{i}=0, \Psi_{1 j}=0$ and $\Psi_{3 j}=0$ do not have common solutions for any $i=0,1,2$.

Proof If we substitute $X_{0}=0$ into $\Psi_{1 j}=0$, we have $t_{j} X_{1}^{4}+u_{j} X_{2}^{4}=0$. Therefore, if we let $t^{1 / 4}$ and $u^{1 / 4}$ be one of the fourth roots of $t_{j}(p)$ and $u_{j}(p)$, respectively, and $\zeta_{8}$ a primitive eighth root of 1 , then $\left(p,\left(0: u^{1 / 4}: \zeta_{8}^{k} t^{1 / 4}\right)(k=1,3,5,7)\right.$ is a common solution of $X_{0}=0$ and $\Psi_{1 j}=0$. On the other hand, if we substitute $X_{0}=0$ into $\Psi_{3 j}=0$, we obtain $t_{j} X_{1} X_{2}^{3}=0$, and since $t_{j}(p) \neq 0$ holds, $(p,(0: 1: 0))$ and $(p,(0: 0: 1))$ are the common solutions of $X_{0}=0$ and $\Psi_{3 j}=0$. Since we have $t u \neq 0$, we see that $X_{0}=0, \Psi_{1 j}=0$ and $\Psi_{3 j}=0$ have no common solution. We can obtain the same results for $X_{1}=0$ and $X_{2}=0$.
q.e.d.

In view of Lemma 4.32, we consider only the solutions satisfying $X_{0} X_{1} X_{2} \neq 0$ in the rest of our argument. Denote $\Psi_{0 j}:=s_{j} X_{0} t_{j} X_{1} u_{j} X_{2}$.

Lemma 4.33 If we fix $j \in\{1,2\}$ with $s_{j}(p) s_{j}\left(p^{\prime}\right) s_{j}\left(p^{\prime \prime}\right) \neq 0$, then $(p,(1: a: b))$ is a common solution of $\Psi_{i j}=0(i=0,1,3,4,5)$ if and only if $a, b$ are cube roots of 1 , and $s_{j}(p)+a t_{j}(p)+b u_{j}(p)=0$.

Proof Since we have $\Psi_{1 j}+\Psi_{3 j}+\Psi_{4 j}=\Psi_{0 j}\left(X_{0}^{3}+X_{1}^{3}+X_{2}^{3}\right)$, we may exclude $\Psi_{1 j}$ from our consideration. Since we have

$$
X_{0}^{5} \Psi_{0 j}-X_{0}^{2}\left(\Psi_{3 j}+\Psi_{4 j}\right)+X_{1} X_{2} \Psi_{5 j}=s_{j}\left(X_{0}^{3}-X_{1}^{3}\right)\left(X_{0}^{3}-X_{1}^{3}\right)
$$

if there exist common solutions, one of $X_{1}^{3}=X_{0}^{3}$ and $X_{2}^{3}=X_{0}^{3}$ must hold. If $X_{1}^{3}=X_{0}^{3}$ holds, however, since we have $X_{0}^{3} \Psi_{0 j}-\Psi_{4 j}=s_{j} X_{0}\left(X_{0}^{3}-X_{2}^{3}\right)$ and since we assume $s_{j}(p) \neq 0$ and $X_{0} \neq 0$, we obtain $X_{2}^{3}=X_{0}^{3}$. Similarly, if we assume $X_{2}^{3}=X_{0}^{3}$, we have $X_{0}^{3} \Psi_{0 j}-\Psi_{3 j}=s_{j} X_{0}\left(X_{0}^{3}-X_{1}^{3}\right)$ and we obtain $X_{1}^{3}=X_{0}^{3}$. Hence if there exist common solutions, they must satisfy $X_{0}^{3}=X_{1}^{3}=X_{2}^{3}$. If we denote by $\omega$ a primitive cube root of 1 , then the common solutions satisfying this condition are

$$
\begin{array}{lll}
(p,(1: 1: 1)) & (p,(1: 1: \omega)) & \left(p,\left(1: 1: \omega^{2}\right)\right) \\
(p,(1: \omega: 1)) & (p,(1: \omega: \omega)) & \left(p,\left(1: \omega: \omega^{2}\right)\right) \\
\left(p,\left(1: \omega^{2}: 1\right)\right) & \left(p,\left(1: \omega^{2}: \omega\right)\right) & \left(p,\left(1: \omega^{2}: \omega^{2}\right)\right) .
\end{array}
$$

If $(p,(1: 1: 1))$ is a common solution, we obtain $s_{j}(p)+t_{j}(p)+u_{j}(p)=0$ by substituting $(p,(1: 1: 1))$ into $\Psi_{i j}=0(i=0,1,3,4,5)$. We can obtain the same result in the other cases.
q.e.d.

Proposition $4.34 \mathcal{U}$ has no base point. Hence a general member of $\mathcal{U}$ is irreducible and nonsingular by Bertini's theorem.

Proof Assume that $(p,(1: a: b))$ is a base point of $\mathcal{U}$. If $g: \tilde{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{P}^{1}$ is the holomorphic mapping defined by the complete linear system of $L_{0}$, then we have $g^{*} \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{1}}(1) \cong L_{0}$. Denote $p^{\prime}:=T_{\sigma}(p)$ and $p^{\prime \prime}:=T_{2 \sigma}(p)$.

First assume that $g(p)=g\left(p^{\prime}\right)$ holds. Since $(p,(1: a: b))$ is a base point, $s(p)+$ $a t(p)+b u(p)=0$ holds for any $s \in H^{0}\left(\tilde{C}, L_{0}\right)$ by Lemma 4.33, where $t:=T_{\sigma}^{*} s$ and
$u:=T_{2 \sigma}^{*}$. Since we have $L_{0} \cong \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{C}}\left(-p-p^{\prime}\right)$, if we let $s^{\prime} \in H^{0}\left(\tilde{C}, L_{0}\right)$ be a global section defining the divisor $p+p^{\prime}$, then $s^{\prime}(p)=0, s^{\prime}\left(p^{\prime}\right)=0$ and $s^{\prime}\left(p^{\prime \prime}\right) \neq 0$ hold, and hence $s^{\prime}(p)+a s^{\prime}\left(p^{\prime}\right)+b s^{\prime}\left(p^{\prime \prime}\right) \neq 0$. This contradicts the assumption. We can obtain the same results when $g\left(p^{\prime}\right)=g\left(p^{\prime \prime}\right)$ or $g\left(p^{\prime \prime}\right)=g(p)$ holds.

Next, we assume that $g(p), g\left(p^{\prime}\right)$ and $g\left(p^{\prime \prime}\right)$ are pairwise different. We may assume that the homogeneous coordinates of these points are $(1: 0),(1: 1),(0: 1)$, respectively. In terms of the homogeneous coordinate $\left(z_{0}: z_{1}\right)$ with $z_{0}, z_{1} \in H^{0}\left(\mathbf{P}^{1}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{1}(1)}\right)$, a global section $\xi \in H^{0}\left(\mathbf{P}^{1}, \mathcal{O}_{\left.\mathbf{P}^{1}(1)\right)}\right.$ can be written as $\xi=A z_{0}+B z_{1}$ for some $A, B \in \mathbf{C}$. Since we have $\xi(1: 0)=A, \xi(1: 1)=A+B$ and $\xi(0: 1)=B$, if we choose $A, B \in \mathbf{C}$ with $(a+1) A+(b+1) B \neq 0$ and if we let $s \in H^{0}\left(\tilde{C}, L_{0}\right)$ be the image of $\xi$ under the natural isomorphism $H^{0}\left(\mathbf{P}^{1}, \mathcal{O}_{\left.\mathbf{P}^{1}(1)\right)}^{\sim} H^{0}\left(\tilde{C}, L_{0}\right)\right.$, then $s$ satisfies $s(p)+a s\left(p^{\prime}\right)+b x\left(p^{\prime \prime}\right) \neq 0$. This contradicts the assumption.
q.e.d.

Let $\tilde{S} \in \mathcal{U}$ be a general member. We may assume that $\tilde{S}$ is irreducible and nonsingular. $S:=\Phi(\tilde{S})$ is contained in the complete linear system $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ on $W$, and $\Phi_{\mid \tilde{S}}: \tilde{S} \rightarrow S$ is the quotient with respect to the restriction of the action of $G$ on $\tilde{W}$. On the other hand, this action is compatible with the action of $G$ on $\tilde{C}$, and hence has no fixed point. Therefore $S$ is irreducible and nonsingular as well.
q.e.d.

Remark Instead of our argument in §4.3.1, we can use the above argument also in the case $d \geq 4$ and $d \not \equiv 0(\bmod 3)$.

### 4.3.5 The canonical mapping

In this section, we study the canonical mappings of those surfaces whose existences were shown in §§4.3.1-4.3.4.

Let $E$ be an indecomposable locally free sheaf of rank 3 , and degree $d$ over an elliptic curve $C$, i.e., $E \in \mathcal{E}(3, d)$. If $d=1$, we have $p_{g}(S)=1$ and the canonical mapping $\Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}$ is trivial. Moreover, we showed the non-existence in the case $d<0$ in $\S \S 4.3 .1-4.3 .2$. Hence we may assume $d \geq 2$.

Since we have $\Phi_{|T|} \mid S^{\prime} \circ \psi=\Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}$, we investigate $\Phi_{|T|}$.
Lemma 4.35 Let $\pi: W:=\mathbf{P}(E) \rightarrow C$ be the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle associated to $E \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(3, d)$, and $T$ a tautological divisor with $\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \cong E$. If we assume $d \geq 4$, then we have Bs $|T|=\emptyset$.

Proof Let $F$ be any fiber of $\pi$, and denote $q:=\pi(F)$. Since we have $\operatorname{dim} H^{1}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T-F)\right)=\operatorname{dim} H^{1}\left(C, E \otimes \mathcal{O}_{C}(-q)\right)=0$, the restriction mapping

$$
H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T)\right) \rightarrow H^{0}\left(F, \mathcal{O}_{F}(T)\right) \cong H^{0}\left(\mathbf{P}^{2}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{2}}(1)\right)
$$

is surjective. Since the complete linear system of $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{P}^{2}}(1)$ has no base point, $|T|$ has no base point on $F$. Since $F$ is any fiber, we are done.
q.e.d.

Corollary 4.36 Let $\pi: W \rightarrow C$ be the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle associated to a locally free sheaf $E \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(3,4)$, and $T$ a tautological divisor of $W$ satisfying $\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \cong E$. Then we have $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{|T|}=4$.

Proof $|T|$ has no base point by Lemma 4.35. Since $T^{3}=4>0$, the image of $W$ under $\Phi_{|T|}$ is 3-dimensional, and hence $\Phi_{|T|}$ gives a covering of $W$ onto $\mathbf{P}^{3}$ of degree 4. q.e.d.

Corollary 4.37 In the notation of Corollary 4.36, any irreducible and nonsingular members of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ are canonical surfaces.

Proof Let $S \in\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ be a general nonsingular member. Since $\mathrm{Bs}|T|=\emptyset$ by Lemma $4.35, \Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}$ is a morphism. Since $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{|T|}=4$ by Corollary 4.36 , the degree of $\Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}$ is $1,2,3$ or 4 .

Since $K_{S}^{2}=T^{2} S=12$ holds, if $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}=4$, then $S^{\prime \prime}:=\Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}(S) \subset \mathbf{P}^{3}$ is a cubic surface. Hence, if we let $H \subset \mathbf{P}^{3}$ be a hyperplane, then we have $S^{\prime \prime} \sim 3 H$. Since $\Phi_{|T|}^{*} H \sim T$ holds, we have $\Phi_{|T|}^{*} S^{\prime \prime} \sim T$, which is absurd since $S \sim 4 T-\pi^{*} D$.

If $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}=3$, then $S^{\prime \prime}$ is a quartic surface. Hence $S^{\prime \prime} \sim 4 H$ holds, and we have $\Phi_{|T|}^{*} S^{\prime \prime} \sim 4 T$. Therefore, there exist fibers $F_{1}, F_{2}, F_{3}, F_{4}$ of $\pi$ satisfying $\Phi_{|T|}^{*} S^{\prime \prime}=$ $S+F_{1}+F_{2}+F_{3}+F_{4}$. Since we have $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{|T|}=4$ and since we assume $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}=$ $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|} \mid S=3$, we see that $\Phi_{|T|}$ is a birational morphism of $F_{1} \cup F_{2} \cup F_{3} \cup F_{4}$ onto its image. This means that the image is not irreducible, and we obtain a contradiction.

Finally, we show that the case $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}=2$ does not occur. Let $p, p^{\prime} \in C$ be two distinct general points. Furthermore, denote $F_{p}:=\pi^{-1}(p)$ and $F_{p^{\prime}}:=\pi^{-1}\left(p^{\prime}\right)$, and let $T_{p}$ and $T_{p^{\prime}}$ be the relative hyperplanes of $W$ satisfying $T \sim T_{p}+F_{p} \sim T_{p^{\prime}}+F_{p^{\prime}}$. Since $p, p^{\prime} \in C$ and $S \in\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ are generic, $S \cap T_{p} \cap F_{p^{\prime}}, S \cap T_{p^{\prime}} \cap F_{p}$ and $S \cap T_{p} \cap T_{p^{\prime}}$ all consist of four distinct points set-theoretically. Since any fiber of $\pi$ is mapped onto its image in $\mathbf{P}^{3}$ by $\Phi_{|T|}$, if $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}=2$, then some point of $S \cap T_{p} \cap F_{p^{\prime}}$ and some point of $S \cap T_{p^{\prime}} \cap F_{p}$ are mapped to the same point by $\Phi_{|T|}$. Hence if we fix any point $q \in S \cap T_{p} \cap F_{p^{\prime}}$ and any point $q^{\prime} \in S \cap T_{p^{\prime}} \cap F_{p}$, we only have to find a member of $|T|$ containing $q$ but not $q^{\prime}$.

It is well-known that $W$ is isomorphic to the symmetric product of $C$ of degree 3. (cf., e.g., [6, pp.310-311] Let $\zeta: C \times C \times C \rightarrow W$ be the quotient morphism. Since the self-intersection number of the divisor $C \times C \times\{p\}+C \times\{p\} \times C+\{p\} \times$ $C \times C$ of $C \times C \times C$ is 6 for any point $p \in C$, and since $\operatorname{deg} \zeta=6$, the image of $(C \times C \times\{p\}) \cup(C \times\{p\} \times C) \cup(\{p\} \times C \times C)$ in $W$ is a relative hyperplane with selfintersection number 1. Therefore, for a general point of $W$, there exist three distinct relative hyperplanes with self-intersection number one containing the point.

Since $p, p^{\prime} \in C$ and $S \in\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ are general, there exist two distinct reltive hyperplanes $T_{p}^{\prime}$ and $T_{p}^{\prime \prime}$ diffrent from $T_{p}$ and containing $q$. If $F_{p}^{\prime}$ and $F_{p}^{\prime \prime}$ are fibers of $\pi$
satisfying $T \sim T_{p}^{\prime}+F_{p}^{\prime} \sim T_{p}^{\prime \prime}+F_{p}^{\prime \prime}$, respectively, then one of $T_{p}^{\prime}+F_{p}^{\prime}$ and $T_{p}^{\prime \prime}+F_{p}^{\prime \prime}$ does not contain $q^{\prime}$.

Hence $\Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}$ is a birational morphism onto its image. q.e.d.
Corollary 4.38 Let $\pi: W \rightarrow C$ be the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle associated to $E \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(3, d)$, and $T$ a tautological divisor with $\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \cong E$. If we assume $d \geq 5$, then $\Phi_{|T|}$ is birational onto its image.

Proof First, we consider the case $d \geq 7$. It suffices to show the existence of a member of $|T|$ which contains $p$ and does not contain $q$ for any pair of distinct points $p, q \in W$. If $p$ and $q$ are contained in the same fiber of $\pi$, we easily see that such a member exists by the proof of Lemma 4.35. Suppose $p$ and $q$ are contained in different fibers. $|T-F|$ has no base point in the fiber $F$ containing $p$ by Lemma 4.35. If we let $T_{0} \in|T-F|$ be a member which does not contain $q$, then $T_{0}+F \in|T|$ contains $p$ and does not contain $q$. Hence $\Phi_{|T|}$ is injective.

When $d=6$, we can show that $\Phi_{|T|}$ is birational onto the image using the same argument as above for points $p, q \in W$ contained in general fibers by Lemma 4.28

If $d=5$, then since $5=T^{3}=\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{|T|} \operatorname{deg} \Phi_{|T|}(W)$ and $\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{|T|}(W) \geq 2$, we see that $\Phi_{|T|}$ is birational onto the image. q.e.d.

Corollary 4.39 Let $\pi: W:=\mathbf{P}(E) \rightarrow C$ be the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle associated to $E \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(3, d)$, $T$ a tautological divisor with $\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \cong E$ and $D \in \operatorname{Div}(C)$ a divisor with $\operatorname{det} E \cong$ $\mathcal{O}_{C}(D)$. If $d \geq 5$ holds, then the canonical mapping of the minimal resolution of $a$ member of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$, which is irreducible and has at most rational double points as singularities, is birational onto the image.

Next, we investigate the canonical mapping in the case $p_{g}(S)=d=3$. We use the notation of $\S 4.3 .3$.

Recall that $\operatorname{Bs}\left|C_{0}+\Gamma_{0}\right|=\operatorname{Bs}\left|4 C_{0}+\Gamma_{0}\right|=\left\{q_{0}\right\}$, where $q_{0}:=C_{0} \cap \Gamma_{0}$, and that all the nonsingular members of $\left|C_{0}+\Gamma_{0}\right|$ have the same tangent.

Proposition 4.40 Let $\pi: W \rightarrow C$ be a $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle associated to a locally free sheaf $E \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(3,3)$ over an elliptic curve $C, T$ the tautological divisor with $\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \cong E, L$ the invertible sheaf with $E \cong L \otimes F_{3}$ and $p_{0} \in C$ the point with $L \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}\left(p_{0}\right)$, and denote $F_{0}:=\pi^{-1}\left(p_{0}\right)$. Then the canonical mapping of a nonsingular member $S \in\left|4 T-3 F_{0}\right|$ has degree 8 .

Proof Since $\mathrm{Bs}|T|=\mathrm{Bs}\left|4 T-3 F_{0}\right|=\left\{q_{0}\right\}$, the canonical system $\left|K_{S}\right|$ of a general nonsingular member $S \in\left|4 T-3 F_{0}\right|$ has one base point. If $\nu: \bar{W} \rightarrow W$ is the blowing-up at $q_{0}$, the complete linear system of the proper transform $\bar{T}$ of $T$ by $\nu$ has one base
point by Lemma 3.5. On the other hand, the proper transform $\bar{S}$ of $S$ by $\nu$ does not go through the base point of $|\bar{T}|$ by Lemma 3.5. Hence, if we denote $\mathcal{E}:=\nu^{-1}\left(q_{0}\right)$, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \operatorname{deg} \Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}=\operatorname{deg} \Phi_{\left|K_{\bar{S}}\right|}=\bar{T}^{2}\left(4 \bar{T}+3 \mathcal{E}-3 F_{0}\right) \\
& \quad=4 \bar{T}^{3}+3 \bar{T}^{2} \mathcal{E}-3 \bar{T}^{2} F_{0}=8+3-3=8
\end{aligned}
$$

> q.e.d.

Finally, we study the canonical mapping in the case $p_{g}(S)=2$.
In §4.2.2, we proved the existence of a surface $S$ with $K_{S}^{2}=3 p_{g}(S), q(S)=1$ and $p_{g}(S)=2$, but did not study the canonical mapping $\Phi_{\left|K_{S}\right|}$ in the case $E \cong E_{0} \oplus L,\left(E_{0} \in\right.$ $\left.\mathcal{E}_{C}(2,1), L \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(1,1)\right)$. On the other hand, we showed the existence of a surface $S$ with the same invariants in the case $E \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(3,2)$. We obtain the following result in these two cases:

Proposition 4.41 Let $E$ be one of the following:
(1) $E:=E_{0} \oplus L$ with $E_{0} \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(2,1), L \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(1,1)$.
(2) $E \in \mathcal{E}_{C}(3,2)$.

Let $\pi: W:=\mathbf{P}(E) \rightarrow C$ be the $\mathbf{P}^{2}$-bundle associated to $E$, $T$ a tautological divisor with $\pi_{*} \mathcal{O}_{W}(T) \cong E$ and $D \in \operatorname{Div}(C)$ a divisor with $\operatorname{det} E \cong \mathcal{O}_{C}(D)$. The canonical mapping of the minimal resolution of a member of $\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$, which is irreducible and has at most rational double points as singularities, gives a linear pencil whose general members are irreducible nonsingular curves of genus 7 .

Proof Let $S \in\left|4 T-\pi^{*} D\right|$ be a general member. We may assume that $S$ is irreducible and has at most rational double points as singularities. Since $H^{0}\left(S, \omega_{S}\right) \cong$ $H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T)\right)$ and $\operatorname{dim} H^{0}\left(W, \mathcal{O}_{W}(T)\right)=2$, the canonical mapping of $S$ clearly gives a linear pencil. Therefore it suffices to show that the intersection $T \cap S$ is a nonsingular curve of genus 7 for a general member $T$ of $|T|$.

Since $\omega_{W} \cong \mathcal{O}_{W}(-3 T) \otimes \operatorname{det} E$, we have $\left.\omega_{T} \cong\left(\mathcal{O}_{W}(-2 T) \otimes \operatorname{det} E\right)\right|_{T}$. Since we may assume that $T$ is irreducible and nonsingular, we have

$$
\left.\left.\omega_{Z} \cong\left(\mathcal{O}_{W}(S) \otimes \mathcal{O}_{W}(-2 T) \otimes \operatorname{det} E\right)\right|_{Z} \cong\left(\mathcal{O}_{W}(2 T)\right)\right|_{Z}
$$

where $Z:=T \cap S$. Hence we have

$$
g(Z)=\frac{1}{2} T(2 T)\left(4 T-\pi^{*} D\right)+1=4 T^{3}-T^{2} \pi^{*} D+1=7 .
$$

q.e.d.

## References

[1] T. Ashikaga, A remark on lower semi-continuity of Kodaira dimension, Master's thesis, Tohoku Univ., 1978 (in Japanese).
[2] T. Ashikaga, A remark on the geography of surfaces with birational canonical morphism, Math. Ann. 290 (1991), 63-76.
[3] T. Ashikaga and K. Konno, Algebraic surfaces of general type with $c_{1}^{2}=3 p_{g}-7$, Tohoku Math. J. 42 (1990), 517-536.
[4] M. F. Atiyah, Vector bundles over an elliptic curve, Proc. London Math. Soc. (3) 7 (1957), 414-452.
[5] A. Beauville, L'application canonique pour les surfaces de type general, Invent. Math. 55 (1979), 121-140.
[6] F. Catanese and C. Ciliberto, Symmetric products of elliptic curves and surfaces of general type with $p_{g}=q=1$, J. Algebraic Geometry 2 (1993), 389-411.
[7] T. Fujita, On Kähler fiber spaces over curves, J. Math. Soc. Japan 30 (1978), 779-794.
[8] W. Fulton and J. Harris, Representation Theory, Springer-Verlag, New York-Heidelberg-London-Paris-Tokyo-Hong Kong-Barcelona-Budapest, 1991.
[9] A. Grothendieck, Sur quelques points d'algèbre homologique, Tohoku Math. J. 9 (1957), 119-221.
[10] E. Horikawa, Algebraic surfaces of general type with small $c_{1}^{2}$, II, Invent. Math. 37 (1976), 121-155.
[11] E. Horikawa, Notes on canonical surfaces, Tohoku Math. J. 43 (1991), 141-148.
[12] E. Horikawa, Certain degenerate fibers in pencils of non-hyperelliptic curves of genus three, preprint.
[13] K. Konno, Non-hyperelliptic fibrations of small genus and certain irregular canonical surfaces, Ann. Scuola Norm. Sup. Pisa Sci. Fis. Mat. (4) 20 (1993), 575-595.
[14] K. Konno, A note on surfaces with pencils of non-hyperelliptic curves of genus 3, Osaka J. Math. 28 (1991), 737-745.
[15] M. Maruyama, On a family of algebraic vector bundles, Number Theory, Algebraic Geometry and Commutative Algebra in honor of Y. Akizuki (Y. Kusunoki et al., eds.) Kinokuniya, Tokyo, (1973), 95-146.
[16] D. Mumford, Abelian Varieties, Tata Inst. Studies in Math., Oxford Univ. Press, 1970.
[17] T. Oda, Vector bundles on an elliptic curve, Nagoya Math. J. 43 (1971), 41-72.
[18] M. Reid, Problems on pencils of small genus, preprint.
[19] T. Suwa, On ruled surfaces of genus 1, J. Math. Soc. Japan 21 (1969), 291-311.

Faculty of General Education<br>Ichinoseki National College of Technology<br>IChinoseki 021<br>Japan<br>e-mail: tomokuni@ichinoseki.ac.jp

